

## Configuration Manual

### ICR-1600 Family



© 2025 Advantech Czech s.r.o. No part of this publication may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photography, recording, or any information storage and retrieval system without written consent. Information in this manual is subject to change without notice, and it does not represent a commitment on the part of Advantech.

Advantech Czech s.r.o. shall not be liable for incidental or consequential damages resulting from the furnishing, performance, or use of this manual.

All brand names used in this manual are the registered trademarks of their respective owners. The use of trademarks or other designations in this publication is for reference purposes only and does not constitute an endorsement by the trademark holder.

## Used symbols



Danger – Information regarding user safety or potential damage to the router.



Attention – Problems that can arise in specific situations.



Information – Useful tips or information of special interest.

## Firmware Version

Current version of firmware is 1.4.5 (August 5, 2025).

# Contents

|                                                              |           |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|-----------|
| <b>1. Getting Started</b>                                    | <b>1</b>  |
| 1.1 Document Content . . . . .                               | 1         |
| 1.2 Configuration Environments . . . . .                     | 2         |
| 1.2.1 Web Interface Initial Setup . . . . .                  | 3         |
| 1.2.2 Remote Management Platform . . . . .                   | 6         |
| 1.3 Device . . . . .                                         | 7         |
| 1.3.1 Persistent Storage . . . . .                           | 7         |
| 1.3.2 Reset . . . . .                                        | 7         |
| <b>2. Status</b>                                             | <b>8</b>  |
| 2.1 General Status . . . . .                                 | 8         |
| 2.1.1 Mobile Connection . . . . .                            | 8         |
| 2.1.2 Ethernet Status . . . . .                              | 9         |
| 2.1.3 WiFi Status . . . . .                                  | 9         |
| 2.1.4 Peripheral Ports . . . . .                             | 9         |
| 2.1.5 Security Information . . . . .                         | 9         |
| 2.1.6 System Information . . . . .                           | 9         |
| 2.2 Mobile WAN Status . . . . .                              | 10        |
| 2.3 WiFi Status . . . . .                                    | 13        |
| 2.4 WiFi Scan . . . . .                                      | 14        |
| 2.5 Network Status . . . . .                                 | 16        |
| 2.5.1 Connections . . . . .                                  | 19        |
| 2.6 DHCP Status . . . . .                                    | 20        |
| 2.7 IPsec Status . . . . .                                   | 21        |
| 2.8 WireGuard Status . . . . .                               | 22        |
| 2.9 DynDNS Status . . . . .                                  | 23        |
| 2.10 System Log . . . . .                                    | 24        |
| <b>3. Configuration</b>                                      | <b>25</b> |
| 3.1 Ethernet . . . . .                                       | 25        |
| 3.1.1 DHCP Server . . . . .                                  | 28        |
| 3.1.2 IPv6 Prefix Delegation . . . . .                       | 29        |
| 3.1.3 802.1X Authentication to RADIUS Server . . . . .       | 30        |
| 3.1.4 LAN Configuration Examples . . . . .                   | 32        |
| 3.2 VRRP Configuration . . . . .                             | 38        |
| 3.3 Mobile WAN Configuration . . . . .                       | 41        |
| 3.3.1 Connection to Mobile Network . . . . .                 | 42        |
| 3.3.2 DNS Address Configuration . . . . .                    | 43        |
| 3.3.3 Check Connection to Mobile Network . . . . .           | 43        |
| 3.3.4 Check Connection Example . . . . .                     | 44        |
| 3.3.5 Data Limit Configuration . . . . .                     | 45        |
| 3.3.6 Switch between SIM Cards Configuration . . . . .       | 45        |
| 3.3.7 Examples of SIM Card Switching Configuration . . . . . | 48        |
| 3.4 PPPoE Configuration . . . . .                            | 50        |
| 3.5 WiFi Access Point . . . . .                              | 52        |

|         |                                                             |     |
|---------|-------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| 3.6     | WiFi Station                                                | 58  |
| 3.7     | Backup Routes                                               | 62  |
| 3.7.1   | Default Priorities for Backup Routes                        | 62  |
| 3.7.2   | User Customized Backup Routes                               | 63  |
| 3.7.3   | Backup Routes Examples                                      | 66  |
| 3.8     | Static Routes                                               | 72  |
| 3.9     | Firewall                                                    | 73  |
| 3.9.1   | Example of the IPv4 Firewall Configuration                  | 76  |
| 3.10    | NAT                                                         | 77  |
| 3.10.1  | Examples of NAT Configuration                               | 80  |
| 3.11    | OpenVPN                                                     | 84  |
| 3.11.1  | Example of the OpenVPN Tunnel Configuration in IPv4 Network | 88  |
| 3.12    | IPsec                                                       | 89  |
| 3.12.1  | Route-based Configuration Scenarios                         | 89  |
| 3.12.2  | IPsec Authentication Scenarios                              | 90  |
| 3.12.3  | Configuration Items Description                             | 91  |
| 3.12.4  | Basic IPv4 IPsec Tunnel Configuration                       | 96  |
| 3.13    | WireGuard                                                   | 97  |
| 3.13.1  | WireGuard IPv4 Tunnel Configuration Example                 | 100 |
| 3.14    | GRE                                                         | 102 |
| 3.14.1  | Example of the GRE Tunnel Configuration                     | 103 |
| 3.15    | L2TP                                                        | 105 |
| 3.15.1  | Example of the L2TP Tunnel Configuration                    | 107 |
| 3.16    | PPTP                                                        | 108 |
| 3.16.1  | Example of the PPTP Tunnel Configuration                    | 110 |
| 3.17    | Services                                                    | 111 |
| 3.17.1  | Authentication                                              | 111 |
| 3.17.2  | DynDNS                                                      | 115 |
| 3.17.3  | FTP                                                         | 116 |
| 3.17.4  | HTTP                                                        | 117 |
| 3.17.5  | NTP                                                         | 118 |
| 3.17.6  | SNMP                                                        | 119 |
| 3.17.7  | SMTP                                                        | 123 |
| 3.17.8  | SMS                                                         | 124 |
| 3.17.9  | SSH                                                         | 133 |
| 3.17.10 | Syslog                                                      | 134 |
| 3.17.11 | Telnet                                                      | 135 |
| 3.18    | Expansion Ports – RS232 & RS485                             | 136 |
| 3.18.1  | Examples of the Expansion Port Configuration                | 138 |
| 3.19    | Scripts                                                     | 139 |
| 3.19.1  | Startup Script                                              | 139 |
| 3.19.2  | Example of Startup Script                                   | 139 |
| 3.19.3  | Up/Down Scripts                                             | 140 |
| 3.19.4  | Example of IPv6 Up/Down Script                              | 140 |
| 3.20    | Automatic Update                                            | 141 |
| 3.20.1  | Example of Automatic Update                                 | 143 |
| 3.20.2  | Example of Automatic Update Based on MAC                    | 144 |

## 4. Customization 145

|     |             |     |
|-----|-------------|-----|
| 4.1 | Router Apps | 145 |
|-----|-------------|-----|

|                                                            |            |
|------------------------------------------------------------|------------|
| 4.2 Settings . . . . .                                     | 147        |
| <b>5. Administration</b>                                   | <b>148</b> |
| 5.1 Manage Users . . . . .                                 | 148        |
| 5.2 Modify User . . . . .                                  | 150        |
| 5.2.1 Two-Factor Authentication . . . . .                  | 151        |
| 5.2.2 Passwordless Console Login . . . . .                 | 154        |
| 5.2.3 Forced Password Change . . . . .                     | 156        |
| 5.3 Change Profile . . . . .                               | 157        |
| 5.4 Set Date and Time . . . . .                            | 158        |
| 5.5 Set SMS Service Center . . . . .                       | 159        |
| 5.6 Unlock SIM Card . . . . .                              | 159        |
| 5.7 Unblock SIM Card . . . . .                             | 160        |
| 5.8 Send SMS . . . . .                                     | 160        |
| 5.9 Backup Configuration . . . . .                         | 161        |
| 5.10 Restore Configuration . . . . .                       | 162        |
| 5.11 Update Firmware . . . . .                             | 163        |
| 5.12 Reboot . . . . .                                      | 164        |
| 5.13 Logout . . . . .                                      | 164        |
| <b>6. Typical Situations</b>                               | <b>165</b> |
| 6.1 Access to the Internet from LAN . . . . .              | 165        |
| 6.2 Backup Access to the Internet from LAN . . . . .       | 167        |
| 6.3 Secure Networks Interconnection or Using VPN . . . . . | 171        |
| 6.4 Serial Gateway . . . . .                               | 173        |
| <b>Appendix A: Open Source Software License</b>            | <b>175</b> |
| <b>Appendix B: Glossary and Acronyms</b>                   | <b>176</b> |
| <b>Appendix C: Index</b>                                   | <b>181</b> |
| <b>Appendix D: Related Documents</b>                       | <b>183</b> |

# List of Figures

|    |                                                      |    |
|----|------------------------------------------------------|----|
| 1  | Web Configuration GUI                                | 4  |
| 2  | Mobile WAN Status                                    | 11 |
| 3  | WiFi Status                                          | 13 |
| 4  | WiFi Scan Output Example                             | 14 |
| 5  | Network Status                                       | 18 |
| 6  | Connection List                                      | 19 |
| 7  | DHCP Status                                          | 20 |
| 8  | IPsec Status                                         | 21 |
| 9  | WireGuard Status Page                                | 22 |
| 10 | DynDNS Status                                        | 23 |
| 11 | System Log Page                                      | 24 |
| 12 | LAN Configuration Page                               | 25 |
| 13 | IPv6 Address with Prefix Example                     | 29 |
| 14 | IEEE 802.1X Functional Diagram                       | 30 |
| 15 | Network Topology for Example 1                       | 32 |
| 16 | LAN Configuration for Example 1                      | 33 |
| 17 | Network Topology for Example 2                       | 34 |
| 18 | LAN Configuration for Example 2                      | 35 |
| 19 | Network Topology for Example 3                       | 36 |
| 20 | LAN Configuration for Example 3                      | 37 |
| 21 | Topology of VRRP configuration example               | 39 |
| 22 | Example of VRRP configuration – main router          | 39 |
| 23 | Example of VRRP configuration – backup router        | 40 |
| 24 | Mobile WAN Configuration                             | 41 |
| 25 | Check Connection Example                             | 44 |
| 26 | Configuration for SIM card switching Example 1       | 48 |
| 27 | Configuration for SIM card switching Example 2       | 49 |
| 28 | PPPoE Configuration                                  | 50 |
| 29 | WiFi Access Point Configuration Page                 | 57 |
| 30 | WiFi Station Configuration Page                      | 58 |
| 31 | Backup Routes Configuration GUI                      | 65 |
| 32 | Example #1: GUI Configuration                        | 66 |
| 33 | Example #1: Topology                                 | 66 |
| 34 | Example #2: GUI Configuration                        | 67 |
| 35 | Example #2: Topology                                 | 67 |
| 36 | Example #3: GUI Configuration                        | 68 |
| 37 | Example #3: Topology for <i>Single WAN</i> mode      | 69 |
| 38 | Example #3: Topology for <i>Multiple WAN</i> mode    | 69 |
| 39 | Example #4: GUI Configuration                        | 70 |
| 40 | Example #4: Topology                                 | 70 |
| 41 | Example #5: GUI Configuration                        | 71 |
| 42 | Example #5: Topology                                 | 71 |
| 43 | Static Routes Configuration                          | 72 |
| 44 | IPv6 Default Firewall Configuration                  | 73 |
| 45 | Topology for the IPv4 Firewall Configuration Example | 76 |
| 46 | IPv4 Firewall Configuration Example                  | 76 |
| 47 | NAT – IPv6 NAT Configuration                         | 78 |

|    |                                                                     |     |
|----|---------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| 48 | Topology for NAT Configuration Example 1 . . . . .                  | 80  |
| 49 | NAT Configuration for Example 1 . . . . .                           | 81  |
| 50 | Topology for NAT Configuration Example 2 . . . . .                  | 82  |
| 51 | NAT Configuration for Example 2 . . . . .                           | 83  |
| 52 | OpenVPN tunnel configuration . . . . .                              | 87  |
| 53 | Topology of OpenVPN Configuration Example . . . . .                 | 88  |
| 54 | IPsec Tunnels Configuration . . . . .                               | 91  |
| 55 | Topology of IPsec Configuration Example . . . . .                   | 96  |
| 56 | WireGuard Tunnels Configuration . . . . .                           | 98  |
| 57 | Topology of WireGuard Configuration Example . . . . .               | 100 |
| 58 | Router A – WireGuard Status Page and Route Table . . . . .          | 101 |
| 59 | Router B – WireGuard Status Page and Route Table . . . . .          | 101 |
| 60 | GRE Tunnel Configuration . . . . .                                  | 103 |
| 61 | Topology of GRE Tunnel Configuration Example . . . . .              | 103 |
| 62 | L2TP Tunnel Configuration . . . . .                                 | 105 |
| 63 | Topology of L2TP Tunnel Configuration Example . . . . .             | 107 |
| 64 | PPTP Tunnel Configuration . . . . .                                 | 108 |
| 65 | Topology of PPTP Tunnel Configuration Example . . . . .             | 110 |
| 66 | Common Configuration Items . . . . .                                | 111 |
| 67 | Configuration of RADIUS . . . . .                                   | 113 |
| 68 | Configuration of TACACS+ . . . . .                                  | 114 |
| 69 | DynDNS Configuration Example . . . . .                              | 115 |
| 70 | Configuration of FTP server . . . . .                               | 116 |
| 71 | Configuration of HTTP and HTTPS services . . . . .                  | 117 |
| 72 | Example of NTP Configuration . . . . .                              | 118 |
| 73 | OID Basic Structure . . . . .                                       | 120 |
| 74 | SNMP Configuration Example . . . . .                                | 121 |
| 75 | MIB Browser Example . . . . .                                       | 122 |
| 76 | SMTP Client Configuration Example . . . . .                         | 123 |
| 77 | SMS Configuration for Example 1 . . . . .                           | 129 |
| 78 | SMS Configuration for Example 2 . . . . .                           | 130 |
| 79 | SMS Configuration for Example 3 . . . . .                           | 131 |
| 80 | SMS Configuration for Example 4 . . . . .                           | 132 |
| 81 | Configuration of HTTP service . . . . .                             | 133 |
| 82 | Syslog configuration . . . . .                                      | 134 |
| 83 | Configuration of Telnet service . . . . .                           | 135 |
| 84 | Expansion Port Configuration . . . . .                              | 136 |
| 85 | Example of Ethernet to serial communication configuration . . . . . | 138 |
| 86 | Example of serial interface configuration . . . . .                 | 138 |
| 87 | Example of IPv6 Up/Down Script . . . . .                            | 140 |
| 88 | Automatic Update . . . . .                                          | 141 |
| 89 | Example of Automatic Update 1 . . . . .                             | 143 |
| 90 | Example of Automatic Update 2 . . . . .                             | 144 |
| 91 | Default Router Apps GUI . . . . .                                   | 145 |
| 92 | Router Apps GUI with Available Online Apps . . . . .                | 146 |
| 93 | Router Apps Settings . . . . .                                      | 147 |
| 94 | Modify User Page . . . . .                                          | 148 |
| 95 | Users Administration Form . . . . .                                 | 150 |
| 96 | Links for Google Authenticator Application . . . . .                | 152 |
| 97 | Links for Authenticator-Extension . . . . .                         | 152 |

|     |                                                                       |     |
|-----|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| 98  | Standard Login . . . . .                                              | 153 |
| 99  | Verification Code . . . . .                                           | 153 |
| 100 | SSH Login . . . . .                                                   | 153 |
| 101 | Key Generation . . . . .                                              | 154 |
| 102 | Forced to Change the Password in GUI . . . . .                        | 156 |
| 103 | Change Profile . . . . .                                              | 157 |
| 104 | Set Real Time Clock . . . . .                                         | 158 |
| 105 | Set SMS Service Center Address . . . . .                              | 159 |
| 106 | Unlock SIM Card . . . . .                                             | 159 |
| 107 | Unblock SIM Card . . . . .                                            | 160 |
| 108 | Send SMS . . . . .                                                    | 160 |
| 109 | Backup Configuration . . . . .                                        | 161 |
| 110 | Restore Configuration . . . . .                                       | 162 |
| 111 | Update Firmware Administration Page . . . . .                         | 163 |
| 112 | Process of Firmware Update . . . . .                                  | 164 |
| 113 | Reboot . . . . .                                                      | 164 |
| 114 | Access to the Internet from LAN – Sample Topology . . . . .           | 165 |
| 115 | Access to the Internet from LAN – Ethernet Configuration . . . . .    | 166 |
| 116 | Access to the Internet from LAN – Mobile WAN Configuration . . . . .  | 166 |
| 117 | Backup Access to the Internet – Sample Topology . . . . .             | 167 |
| 118 | Backup Access to the Internet – Ethernet Configuration . . . . .      | 167 |
| 119 | Backup Access to the Internet – WiFi Configuration . . . . .          | 168 |
| 120 | Backup Access to the Internet – Mobile WAN Configuration . . . . .    | 169 |
| 121 | Backup Access to the Internet – Backup Routes Configuration . . . . . | 170 |
| 122 | Secure Networks Interconnection – Sample Topology . . . . .           | 171 |
| 123 | Secure Networks Interconnection – OpenVPN Configuration . . . . .     | 172 |
| 124 | Serial Gateway – Sample Topology . . . . .                            | 173 |
| 125 | Serial Gateway – konfigurace <i>Expansion Port 1</i> . . . . .        | 174 |

# List of Tables

|    |                                                                  |     |
|----|------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| 1  | Reset Storage Actions . . . . .                                  | 7   |
| 2  | Mobile Connection . . . . .                                      | 8   |
| 3  | Peripheral Ports . . . . .                                       | 9   |
| 4  | System Information . . . . .                                     | 9   |
| 5  | Mobile Network Information . . . . .                             | 10  |
| 6  | Signal Strength Value Ranges . . . . .                           | 11  |
| 7  | Description of Periods . . . . .                                 | 12  |
| 8  | Mobile Network Statistics . . . . .                              | 12  |
| 9  | Detailed Information about WiFi Networks . . . . .               | 15  |
| 10 | Description of Interfaces in Network Status . . . . .            | 16  |
| 11 | Description of Information in Network Status . . . . .           | 17  |
| 12 | DHCP Status Description . . . . .                                | 20  |
| 13 | Configuration of the Network Interface – IPv4 and IPv6 . . . . . | 26  |
| 14 | Configuration of the Network Interface – Global Items . . . . .  | 27  |
| 15 | Configuration of the Dynamic DHCP Server . . . . .               | 28  |
| 16 | Configuration of Static DHCP Server . . . . .                    | 28  |
| 17 | IPv6 Prefix Delegation Configuration . . . . .                   | 29  |
| 18 | Supported Roles for IEEE 802.1X Authentication . . . . .         | 31  |
| 19 | Configuration of 802.1X Authentication . . . . .                 | 31  |
| 20 | VRRP configuration . . . . .                                     | 38  |
| 21 | Check connection . . . . .                                       | 39  |
| 22 | Mobile WAN Connection Configuration . . . . .                    | 42  |
| 23 | Check Connection to Mobile Network Configuration . . . . .       | 44  |
| 24 | Data Limit Configuration . . . . .                               | 45  |
| 25 | Switch between SIM cards configuration . . . . .                 | 46  |
| 26 | Parameters for SIM card switching . . . . .                      | 47  |
| 27 | PPPoE configuration . . . . .                                    | 51  |
| 28 | WiFi Configuration Items Description . . . . .                   | 56  |
| 29 | WLAN Configuration Items Description . . . . .                   | 61  |
| 30 | Backup Routes Modes . . . . .                                    | 63  |
| 31 | Backup Routes Configuration . . . . .                            | 64  |
| 32 | Static Routes Configuration for IPv4 . . . . .                   | 72  |
| 33 | Filtering of Incoming Packets . . . . .                          | 74  |
| 34 | Forward Filtering . . . . .                                      | 75  |
| 35 | NAT Configuration . . . . .                                      | 77  |
| 36 | Remote Access Configuration . . . . .                            | 79  |
| 37 | Configuration of Send all incoming packets to server . . . . .   | 79  |
| 38 | OpenVPN Configuration . . . . .                                  | 86  |
| 39 | OpenVPN Configuration Example . . . . .                          | 88  |
| 40 | IPsec Tunnel Configuration . . . . .                             | 95  |
| 41 | Simple IPv4 IPsec Tunnel Configuration . . . . .                 | 96  |
| 42 | WireGuard Tunnel Configuration . . . . .                         | 99  |
| 43 | WireGuard IPv4 Tunnel Configuration Example . . . . .            | 100 |
| 44 | GRE Tunnel Configuration . . . . .                               | 102 |
| 45 | GRE Tunnel Configuration Example . . . . .                       | 104 |
| 46 | L2TP Tunnel Configuration . . . . .                              | 106 |
| 47 | L2TP Tunnel Configuration Example . . . . .                      | 107 |

|    |                                                                      |     |
|----|----------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| 48 | PPTP Tunnel Configuration . . . . .                                  | 109 |
| 49 | PPTP Tunnel Configuration Example . . . . .                          | 110 |
| 50 | Enter Caption . . . . .                                              | 112 |
| 51 | Configuration of RADIUS . . . . .                                    | 113 |
| 52 | Configuration of TACACS+ . . . . .                                   | 114 |
| 53 | DynDNS Configuration Items Description . . . . .                     | 115 |
| 54 | Parameters for FTP service configuration . . . . .                   | 116 |
| 55 | Parameters for HTTP and HTTPS services configuration . . . . .       | 117 |
| 56 | NTP Configuration . . . . .                                          | 118 |
| 57 | SNMP Agent Configuration . . . . .                                   | 119 |
| 58 | SNMPv3 Configuration . . . . .                                       | 119 |
| 59 | Object identifier for binary inputs and output . . . . .             | 120 |
| 60 | SMTP client configuration . . . . .                                  | 123 |
| 61 | SMS Configuration . . . . .                                          | 124 |
| 62 | Control via SMS . . . . .                                            | 125 |
| 63 | Control SMS . . . . .                                                | 125 |
| 64 | Send SMS on the serial Port 1 . . . . .                              | 126 |
| 65 | Send SMS on the serial Port 2 . . . . .                              | 126 |
| 66 | Sending/receiving of SMS on TCP port specified . . . . .             | 127 |
| 67 | List of AT Commands . . . . .                                        | 128 |
| 68 | Parameters for SSH service configuration . . . . .                   | 133 |
| 69 | Syslog configuration . . . . .                                       | 134 |
| 70 | Parameters for Telnet service configuration . . . . .                | 135 |
| 71 | Expansion Port Configuration – serial interface . . . . .            | 137 |
| 72 | Expansion Port Configuration – <i>Check TCP connection</i> . . . . . | 137 |
| 73 | Automatic Update Options . . . . .                                   | 142 |
| 74 | Router Apps Settings . . . . .                                       | 147 |
| 75 | Action Button Description . . . . .                                  | 149 |
| 76 | User Parameters . . . . .                                            | 149 |

# 1. Getting Started

## 1.1 Document Content

This manual provides detailed setup procedures for Advantech ICR-1600 family routers, offering comprehensive guidance on the following topics:

- Web configuration interface for the routers – detailed in Chapter [1.2](#).
- Overview of available remote management system – see Chapter [1.2.2](#).
- Detailed configuration instructions, item by item, following the web interface's structure:
  - Status – discussed in Chapter [2](#).
  - Configuration – outlined in Chapter [3](#).
  - Customization – covered in Chapter [4](#).
  - Administration – explained in Chapter [5](#).
- Configuration examples for typical scenarios – presented in Chapter [6](#).



For detailed information on topics such as ordering, hardware features, initial setup, and technical specifications, refer to the **Hardware Manual** available on the [Engineering Portal](#).

## 1.2 Configuration Environments



- If you are unsure about the correctness of your configuration or its potential impact on the router's longevity, consult our technical support for guidance.
- Before putting the router into operation, make sure to connect all the components required for running your applications. Refer to the [Hardware Manual](#) for details.
- For security reasons, we recommend regularly updating the router's firmware to the latest version. Downgrading the firmware to an older version than the production version or uploading firmware intended for a different device may cause the device to malfunction.
- It is highly recommended to have JavaScript enabled in the browser; otherwise, field validation and some functions will be disabled.
- Three unsuccessful login attempts will block HTTP(S) access from the IP address for one minute.

For configuring an Advantech router, one of the following environments may be used:

- Via a **graphical interface** accessible in a **web browser**. This option is primarily covered in this manual, start with Chapter [1.2.1 Web Interface Initial Setup](#).
- Via a **console interface** accessing the router by **Secure Shell** (SSH). For console configuration commands, refer to the [Command Line Interface](#) Application Note.
- Via Advantech's **remote device management** platform, [WebAccess/DMP](#), which provides extensive management and monitoring capabilities to ensure devices remain secure and up-to-date. For more information, refer to Chapter [1.2.2 Remote Management Platform](#).

For more information on enhancing the router's basic functionality, refer to the [Extending Router Functionality](#) Application Note.

### 1.2.1 Web Interface Initial Setup



Starting with firmware version 1.4.5, both IPv4 and IPv6 firewalls are enabled by default. These firewalls permit only traffic originating from the default `192.168.1.0/24` network. Proper configuration of these settings is critical to avoid unintentionally blocking router communication during initial setup.



- Users with the *User* role have read-only access to the web interface, except for the *Modify User* functionality. Certain menu items remain unavailable to non-admin users.
- When configuring text fields in the web interface, consult subsection *Allowed and Restricted Input Characters* for permitted character sets.
- The router's *Name* and *Location* fields in SNMP settings control the display in the interface's upper-right corner - detailed in Chapter [3.17.6 SNMP](#).

Advantech routers feature a secure web-based configuration interface accessible via HTTPS (Figure 1). This interface provides real-time network statistics, signal strength monitoring, system log access, and comprehensive device management capabilities. The web interface enforces TLS 1.2 or higher for all connections, with certificate validation required to prevent man-in-the-middle attacks.

To establish initial web interface access on a factory-default router:

- First, ensure proper hardware preparation. For cellular models, insert an active SIM card that is compatible with your carrier's frequency bands and verify the required APN configuration. Instructions for inserting the SIM card can be found in the *Hardware Manual*, Chapter *SIM Card Slots*.
- Attach all required antennas before powering the device, including WiFi antennas for dual-function models. Connect the power supply using only Advantech-approved adapters specified in Chapter *Power Supply* of the hardware documentation.
- During the boot process, the router initializes its DHCP server on the ETH0 interface. Configure connected devices to obtain IP addresses automatically via DHCP.
- The default LAN interface (ETH0) assigns addresses from the `192.168.1.0/24` pool, with the router itself at `192.168.1.1`. Access the web interface by navigating to <https://192.168.1.1> in a modern browser, noting that HTTP connections are strictly prohibited.
- The factory-default administrator account uses the username `root`. The password for this account appears on the router's product label, with `root` serving as the fallback credential if no label information exists.
- Upon first login, the system enforces immediate password change through a guided workflow. The new password must meet complexity requirements detailed in Chapter [3.17.1 Authentication](#).
- To prevent certificate warnings, install the router's self-signed certificate or a third-party CA-signed certificate using the procedures outlined in subsection *Managing HTTPS Certificates*.

| Status                    | General Status <span>refresh</span>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|---------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| General                   |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| Mobile WAN                |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| WiFi                      |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| Network                   |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| DHCP                      |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| IPsec                     |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| WireGuard                 |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| DynDNS                    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| System Log                |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| Configuration             |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| Ethernet                  |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| VRRP                      |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| Mobile WAN                |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| PPPoE                     |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| WiFi                      |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| Backup Routes             |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| Static Routes             |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| Firewall                  |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| NAT                       |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| OpenVPN                   |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| IPsec                     |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| WireGuard                 |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| GRE                       |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| L2TP                      |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| PPTP                      |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| Services                  |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| Expansion Port 1          |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| Expansion Port 2          |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| Scripts                   |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| Automatic Update          |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| Customization             |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| Router Apps               |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| Administration            |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| Users                     |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| Change Profile            |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| <b>Change Password</b>    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| Two-Factor Authentication |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| Set Real Time Clock       |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| Set SMS Service Center    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| Unlock SIM Card           |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| Unblock SIM Card          |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| Send SMS                  |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| Backup Configuration      |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| Restore Configuration     |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| Update Firmware           |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| Reboot                    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| Logout                    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|                           | <div>Mobile Connection</div> SIM Card : 1st<br>IP Address : 10.0.9.140 / 255.255.255.248<br>IPv6 Address : Unassigned<br>Rx Data : 1.6 MB<br>Tx Data : 4.0 MB<br>Uptime : 0 days, 0 hours, 2 minutes<br>» More Information «                                                           |
|                           | <div>ETH0</div> IP Address : 10.64.0.253 / 255.255.252.0<br>IPv6 Address : fd00:a40::253 / 56<br>MAC Address : 00:01:42:8A:86:F4<br>Rx Data : 53.5 MB<br>Tx Data : 2.3 MB<br>» More Information «                                                                                      |
|                           | <div>ETH1</div> IP Address : 10.65.0.253 / 255.255.252.0<br>IPv6 Address : fd00:a41::253 / 56<br>MAC Address : 00:01:42:8A:86:F4<br>Rx Data : 58.5 MB<br>Tx Data : 6.2 KB<br>» More Information «                                                                                      |
|                           | <div>WiFi AP 1</div> IP Address : Unassigned<br>IPv6 Address : Unassigned<br>MAC Address : E8:8D:A6:11:D2:9C<br>» More Information «                                                                                                                                                   |
|                           | <div>WiFi STA</div> IP Address : Unassigned<br>IPv6 Address : Unassigned<br>MAC Address : DC:BD:CC:35:A9:75<br>» More Information «                                                                                                                                                    |
|                           | <div>Peripheral Ports</div> Expansion Port 1 : RS-232<br>Expansion Port 2 : RS-485<br>Binary Input : On<br>Binary Output : Off                                                                                                                                                         |
|                           | <div>System Information</div> Firmware Version : 6.3.11 (2024-01-22) BETA<br>Serial Number : N/A<br>Hardware UUID : N/A<br>Product Revision : N/A<br>Profile : Standard<br>Time : 2024-02-29 12:11:10<br>Uptime : 13 days, 3 hours, 56 minutes<br>» More Information «<br>» Licenses « |

Figure 1: Web Configuration GUI

## Managing HTTPS Certificates

The router includes a self-signed HTTPS certificate. Since the identity of this certificate cannot be validated, web browsers may display a warning message. To avoid this warning, you can upload your own certificate—signed by a Certification Authority—to the router. If you wish to use your own certificate (for example, in combination with a dynamic DNS service), replace the `/etc/certs/https_cert` and `/etc/certs/https_key` files on the router. This can easily be done via the GUI on the *HTTP* configuration page, as detailed in Chapter 3.17.4.

To use the router's self-signed certificate without encountering the security warning (due to a domain name mismatch) each time you log in, follow these steps:

- Add a DNS record to your DNS system. For Linux/Unix systems, edit `/etc/hosts`; for Windows, navigate to `C:\WINDOWS\system32\drivers\etc\hosts`; or configure your own DNS server. Insert a new record pairing the router's IP address with a domain name derived from its MAC address (specifically, the MAC address of the first network interface, as shown in the *Network Status* on the router's web interface), using dashes instead of colons for separation. For example, a router with the MAC address 00:11:22:33:44:55 would use the domain name 00-11-22-33-44-55.
- Access the router via this new domain name (e.g., `https://00-11-22-33-44-55`). If a security warning appears, add an exception to prevent it from recurring (for example, in the Firefox web browser). If the option to add an exception is unavailable, export the certificate to a file and import it into your browser or operating system.

**Note:** Using a domain name based on the router's MAC address may not be compatible with all operating system and browser combinations.

## Allowed and Restricted Input Characters

When configuring the router via the web interface, it is crucial to avoid using forbidden characters in any input field—not just in password fields. Below are the valid and forbidden characters for input. Note that, in some cases, the space character may also be disallowed.

**Valid** characters include: 0-9 a-z A-Z \* , + - . / : = ? ! # % @ [ ] \_ { } ~

**Forbidden** characters include: " \$ & ' ( ) ; < > \ ^ ` |

It is important to follow these guidelines during configuration, as entering invalid characters can lead to errors or unintended behavior.

## Supported Certificate Formats

All GUI forms that allow the uploading of certificate files support the following file types:

- CA, Local/Remote Certificate: `*.pem`, `*.crt`, `*.p12`
- Private Key: `*.pem`, `*.key`, `*.p12`

### 1.2.2 Remote Management Platform

*WebAccess/DMP* is an advanced, enterprise-grade platform for provisioning, monitoring, managing, and configuring Advantech's routers and IoT gateways. It offers zero-touch enablement for each remote device. For more information, refer to the application note [3] or visit the [WebAccess/DMP](#) webpage.

New routers come pre-installed with the *WebAccess/DMP* client, which by default activates the connection to the *WebAccess/DMP* server. This connection can be disabled on the *Welcome* page upon initial web interface login or under (*Customization* → *Router Apps* → *WebAccess/DMP Client*).



The activated client periodically uploads router identifiers and configurations to the *WebAccess/DMP* server.

## 1.3 Device

### 1.3.1 Persistent Storage

The device's persistent storage consists of three partitions, combined into a single directory structure:

- **System Data:** System data distributed with firmware upgrades.
- **User Data:** Separate storage for user data, accessible at `/var/data` .
- **Router Apps Installed:** Separate storage for Router Apps data, accessible at `/opt` .

### 1.3.2 Reset



Before performing a factory reset on the router, consider creating a backup of its configuration. See Chapter [5.9 Backup Configuration](#).

The reset button on the router, labeled as *RST*, serves three different purposes:

- **Reset:**
  - Hold the *RST* button for **less than 4 seconds**.
  - The router will reboot, applying its customized configuration.
  - You can also trigger a reboot by selecting the *Reboot* option in the router's web GUI.
- **Configuration Reset<sup>1</sup>:**
  - Press and hold the *RST* button for **more than 4 seconds**.
  - The *PWR* LED will turn off and then back on. It is recommended to hold the *RST* button for an additional second after the *PWR* LED turns back on.
  - The router will reset to its default factory configuration, including RA configurations.
- **Emergency Reset<sup>1</sup>:**
  - Use this option if the router fails to boot due to incorrect configuration.
  - Power off the router by disconnecting its power supply. Then, while holding the *RST* button, **power on the router** and continue holding the *RST* button for **at least 15 seconds**.
  - The router will reset its configuration, including RA configurations, similar to the *Configuration Reset*.

The following table summarizes which storage areas are retained and which are deleted during different reset procedures.

| Storage                   | Reset | Configuration Reset | Emergency Reset  |
|---------------------------|-------|---------------------|------------------|
| Router & RA Configuration | Keep  | Reset to default    | Reset to default |
| System Data               | Keep  | Keep                | Reset to default |
| User Data                 | Keep  | Keep                | Delete           |
| Router Apps Installed     | Keep  | Keep                | Keep             |

Table 1: Reset Storage Actions

<sup>1</sup>Upon first login after a reset, the user will be prompted to change their password.

## 2. Status



All status pages can display live data. To enable this feature, click on the *refresh* button in the top right corner on the status page. To stop the data update and to limit the amount of data transferred, disable automatic data updates by clicking the *pause* button again.

### 2.1 General Status

You can reach a summary of basic router information and its activities by opening the *General* status page. This page is displayed when you log in to the device by default. The information displayed on this page is divided into several sections, based upon the type of the router and its hardware configuration. Typically, there are sections for the mobile connection, LAN, system information, system information, and eventually for the WiFi and peripheral ports, if the device is equipped with.



*IPv6 Address* item can show multiple different addresses for one network interface. This is standard behavior since an IPv6 interface uses more addresses. The second IPv6 Address showed after pressing *More Information* is automatically generated EUI-64 format link local IPv6 address derived from MAC address of the interface. It is generated and assigned the first time the interface is used (e.g. cable is connected, Mobile WAN connecting, etc.).

#### 2.1.1 Mobile Connection

| Item        | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|-------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| SIM Card    | Identification of the SIM card                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| Interface   | Defines the interface                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| Flags       | Displays network interface flags:<br>None - no flags<br>Up - the interface is administratively enabled<br>Running - the interface is in operational state (cable detected)<br>Multicast - the interface is capable of multicast transmission |
| IP Address  | IP address of the interface                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| MTU         | Maximum packet size that the equipment is able to transmit                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| Rx Data     | Total number of received bytes                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| Rx Packets  | Received packets                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| Rx Errors   | Erroneous received packets                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| Rx Dropped  | Dropped received packets                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| Rx Overruns | Lost received packets because of overload                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| Tx Data     | Total number of sent bytes                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| Tx Packets  | Sent packets                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| Tx Errors   | Erroneous sent packets                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Tx Dropped  | Dropped sent packets                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| Tx Overruns | Lost sent packets because of overload                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| Uptime      | Indicates how long the connection to the cellular network has been established                                                                                                                                                               |

Table 2: Mobile Connection

### 2.1.2 Ethernet Status

Every Ethernet interface has its separate section on the *General* status page. Items displayed here have the same meaning as items in the previous part. Moreover, the *MAC Address* item shows the MAC address of the corresponding router's interface. Visible information depends on the Ethernet configuration, see Chapter 3.1.

### 2.1.3 WiFi Status

Items displayed in this part have the same meaning as items in the previous part. *WiFi AP* part displays information for the WiFi interface (wlan0) working in access point mode, for the configuration see Chapter 3.5. *WiFi STA* part displays information for the WiFi interface (wlan1) working in station mode, for the configuration description see Chapter 3.6.

### 2.1.4 Peripheral Ports

| Item             | Description                                         |
|------------------|-----------------------------------------------------|
| Expansion Port 1 | An interface detected on the first expansion port.  |
| Expansion Port 2 | An interface detected on the second expansion port. |
| Binary Input     | State of the binary input.                          |
| Binary Output    | State of the binary output.                         |

Table 3: Peripheral Ports

### 2.1.5 Security Information

This section provides information about the logged-in user, their last login time, IP address, and the number of failed login attempts.

### 2.1.6 System Information

System information about the device is displayed in the *System Information* section.

| Item                          | Description                                                                                                                                              |
|-------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Product Name                  | Name of the product (may not match with the P/N or order code).                                                                                          |
| Product Type                  | Type of the product (may be N/A or the same as the Product Name).                                                                                        |
| Firmware Version              | Information about the firmware version.                                                                                                                  |
| Serial Number                 | Serial number of the router (in case of N/A is not available).                                                                                           |
| Hardware UUID <sup>1</sup>    | Unique HW identifier for the device.                                                                                                                     |
| Product Revision <sup>1</sup> | Manufactured product revision number.                                                                                                                    |
| Profile                       | Current profile – standard or alternative profiles (profiles are used for example to switch between different modes of operation).                       |
| CPU Usage                     | CPU usage value (turn on the refresh in the top right corner).                                                                                           |
| Memory Usage                  | Memory usage value (turn on the refresh in the top right corner).                                                                                        |
| Time                          | Current date and time.                                                                                                                                   |
| Uptime                        | Indicates how long the router is used.                                                                                                                   |
| Licenses                      | Link to the list of open source software components of the firmware together with their license type. Click on the license type to see the license text. |

Table 4: System Information

<sup>1</sup>It may not be available for some models.

## 2.2 Mobile WAN Status

The *Mobile WAN* menu item contains current information about connections to the mobile network. The first part of this page (*Mobile Network Information*) displays basic information about mobile network the router operates in. There is also information about the module, which is mounted in the router.

| Item                                  | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|---------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Registration                          | State of the network registration                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| Operator                              | Specifies the operator's network the router operates in.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| Technology                            | Transmission technology                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| PLMN                                  | Code of operator                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| Cell                                  | Cell the router is connected to (in hexadecimal format).                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| LAC/TAC                               | Unique number (in hexadecimal format) assigned to each location area. LAC (Location Area Code) is for 2G/3G networks and TAC (Tracking Area Code) is for 4G networks.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| Channel                               | Channel the router communicates on <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>•UARFCN in case of UMTS/HSPA technology,</li> <li>•EARFCN in case of LTE technology.</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| Band                                  | Cellular band abbreviation.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| Signal Strength                       | Signal strength (in dBm) of the selected cell, for details see Table 6.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| Signal Quality                        | Signal quality of the selected cell: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>•EC/IO for UMTS (it's the ratio of the signal received from the pilot channel – EC – to the overall level of the spectral density, ie the sum of the signals of other cells – IO).</li> <li>•RSRQ for LTE technology (Defined as the ratio <math>\frac{N \times RSRP}{RSSI}</math>).</li> <li>•The value is not available for the EDGE technology.</li> </ul> |
| RSSI, RSRP, RSRQ, SINR, RSCP or Ec/Io | Other parameters reporting signal strength or quality. Please note, that some of them may not be available, depending on the cellular module or cellular technology.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| CSQ                                   | Cell signal strength with following value ranges: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 2 – 9 = Marginal,</li> <li>• 10 – 14 = OK,</li> <li>• 15 – 19 = Good,</li> <li>• 20 – 30 = Excellent.</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| Manufacturer                          | Module manufacturer                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Model                                 | Type of module                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| Revision                              | Revision of module                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| IMEI                                  | IMEI (International Mobile Equipment Identity) number of module                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| ICCID                                 | Integrated Circuit Card Identifier is international and unique serial number of the SIM card.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |

Table 5: Mobile Network Information

Mobile WAN Status

refresh

Mobile Network Information

Registration : Home Network

Operator : Vodafone

Technology : LTE

PLMN : 23003

Cell : 10A80C

LAC : 947C

Channel : 6400

Signal Strength : -71 dBm

Signal Quality : -7 dB

» More Information «

Statistics for 1st SIM card

|              | Today     | Yesterday | This Week | Last Week | This Period | Last Period |
|--------------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-------------|-------------|
| Rx Data      | : 0 KB    | 24 KB     | 24 KB     | 0 KB      | 24 KB       | 0 KB        |
| Tx Data      | : 0 KB    | 908 KB    | 908 KB    | 0 KB      | 908 KB      | 0 KB        |
| Connections  | : 0       | 6         | 6         | 0         | 6           | 0           |
| Signal Min   | : -74 dBm | -73 dBm   | -74 dBm   | ?         | -74 dBm     | ?           |
| Signal Avg   | : -72 dBm | -71 dBm   | -72 dBm   | ?         | -72 dBm     | ?           |
| Signal Max   | : -71 dBm | -71 dBm   | -71 dBm   | ?         | -71 dBm     | ?           |
| Cells        | : 1       | 1         | 1         | 0         | 1           | 0           |
| Availability | : 100.0%  | 99.2%     | 99.8%     | 0.0%      | 99.8%       | 0.0%        |

Statistics for 2nd SIM card

|              | Today  | Yesterday | This Week | Last Week | This Period | Last Period |
|--------------|--------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-------------|-------------|
| Rx Data      | : 0 KB | 0 KB      | 0 KB      | 0 KB      | 0 KB        | 0 KB        |
| Tx Data      | : 0 KB | 0 KB      | 0 KB      | 0 KB      | 0 KB        | 0 KB        |
| Connections  | : 0    | 0         | 0         | 0         | 0           | 0           |
| Signal Min   | : ?    | ?         | ?         | ?         | ?           | ?           |
| Signal Avg   | : ?    | ?         | ?         | ?         | ?           | ?           |
| Signal Max   | : ?    | ?         | ?         | ?         | ?           | ?           |
| Cells        | : 0    | 0         | 0         | 0         | 0           | 0           |
| Availability | : 0.0% | 0.0%      | 0.0%      | 0.0%      | 0.0%        | 0.0%        |

Connection Log

2019-08-21 23:20:07 (1st SIM card) Connection successfully established.

Figure 2: Mobile WAN Status

The value of signal strength is displayed in different color: in black for good, in orange for fair and in red for poor signal strength.

| Signal Strength | CDMA (RSSI)        | UMTS/HSPA (RSCP)   | LTE (RSRP)          |
|-----------------|--------------------|--------------------|---------------------|
| good            | > -70 dBm          | > -75 dBm          | > -90 dBm           |
| fair            | -70 dBm to -89 dBm | -75 dBm to -94 dBm | -90 dBm to -109 dBm |
| poor            | < -89 dBm          | < -94 dBm          | < -109 dBm          |

Table 6: Signal Strength Value Ranges

The middle part of this page, called *Statistics*, displays information about mobile signal quality, transferred data and number of connections for all the SIM cards (for each period). The router has standard intervals, such as the previous 24 hours and last week, and also period starting with *Accounting Start* defined for the MWAN module.

| Period      | Description                                |
|-------------|--------------------------------------------|
| Today       | Today from 0:00 to 23:59                   |
| Yesterday   | Yesterday from 0:00 to 23:59               |
| This week   | This week from Monday 0:00 to Sunday 23:59 |
| Last week   | Last week from Monday 0:00 to Sunday 23:59 |
| This period | This accounting period                     |
| Last period | Last accounting period                     |

Table 7: Description of Periods

| Item         | Description                                                                   |
|--------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| RX data      | Total volume of received data                                                 |
| TX data      | Total volume of sent data                                                     |
| Connections  | Number of connection to mobile network establishment                          |
| Signal Min   | Minimal signal strength                                                       |
| Signal Avg   | Average signal strength                                                       |
| Signal Max   | Maximal signal strength                                                       |
| Cells        | Number of switch between cells                                                |
| Availability | Availability of the router via the mobile network (expressed as a percentage) |

Table 8: Mobile Network Statistics



Tips for *Mobile Network Statistics* table:

- *Availability* is expressed as a percentage. It is the ratio of time connection to the mobile network has been established to the time that router has been is turned on.
- Placing your cursor over the maximum or minimum signal strength will display the last time the router reached that signal strength.

The last part (*Connection Log*) displays information about the mobile network connections and any problems that occurred while establishing them.

## 2.3 WiFi Status



This feature is accessible only on routers equipped with a WiFi module.

Selecting the *Status* → *WiFi* → *Status* option in the web interface's main menu displays details about the WiFi access point (AP) and the WiFi station (STA), including a list of all stations connected to the AP.

An example output for WiFi status is illustrated in the figure below. It includes information on the WiFi chip, its firmware version, and the supported modes for the module. For instance, the notation "Supports 1 station and 2 access points" indicates that it is possible to use one station configuration alongside two distinct Access Point configurations simultaneously.

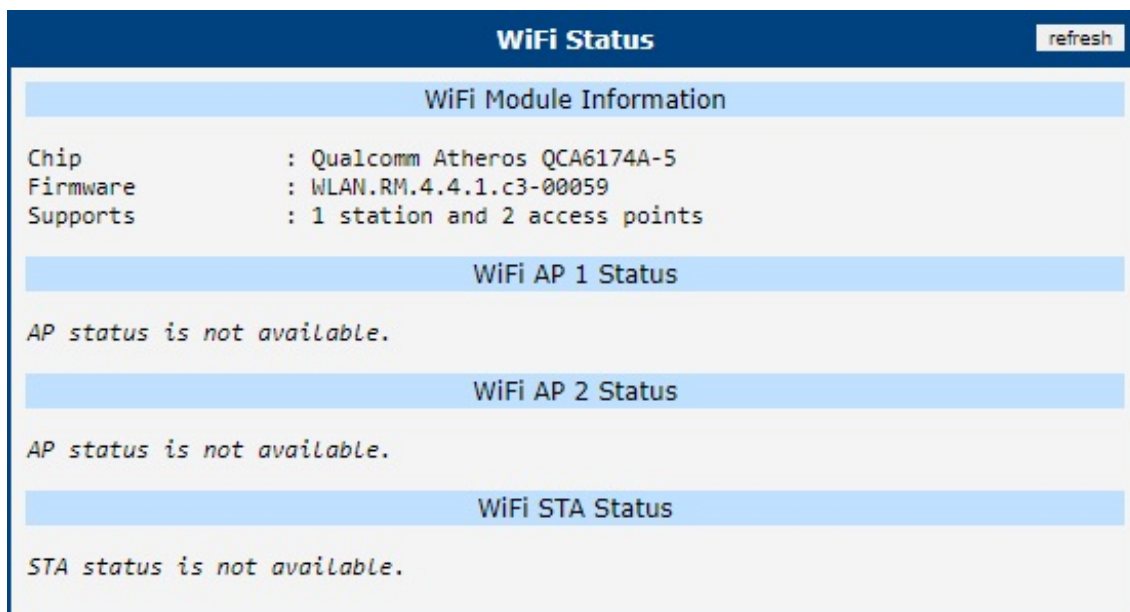


Figure 3: WiFi Status

## 2.4 WiFi Scan



This feature is accessible only on routers equipped with a WiFi module.

Selecting *Status* → *WiFi* → *Scan* initiates a scan for nearby WiFi networks, with the results displayed as shown in Figure 4.

| WiFi Scan            |  |                         |            |                             |
|----------------------|--|-------------------------|------------|-----------------------------|
| List of BSSs on STA1 |  |                         |            |                             |
| b4:fb:e4:4e:27:3b    |  | <a href="#">Connect</a> | Ch36/5GHz  | WPA2-PSK/AES workbench5GHz  |
| » More Information « |  |                         |            |                             |
| ba:fb:e4:4d:26:c8    |  | <a href="#">Connect</a> | Ch1/2.4GHz | WPA2-PSK/AES AdvantechGuest |
| » More Information « |  |                         |            |                             |
| 10:08:2c:55:60:a5    |  | <a href="#">Connect</a> | Ch6/2.4GHz | WPA2-PSK/AES workbench      |
| » More Information « |  |                         |            |                             |
| 8c:8b:83:75:0f:b7    |  | <a href="#">Connect</a> | Ch1/2.4GHz | WPA2-PSK/AES advantech      |
| » More Information « |  |                         |            |                             |

Figure 4: WiFi Scan Output Example

If you click on the *Connect* button next to the respective WiFi network, you will be redirected to the *Configuration* → *WiFi* → *Station* page, where the available fields will be pre-filled and you will be able to connect to the network by entering authentication details.

For each network, you can view details by clicking on the *More Information* button. Below is the description of some items from the WiFi scanning output.

| Item                 | Description                                                                                                 |
|----------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| BSS                  | MAC address of the access point (AP).                                                                       |
| TSF                  | Synchronizes timers across all stations in a Basic Service Set (BSS).                                       |
| freq                 | Frequency band of the WiFi network in MHz.                                                                  |
| beacon interval      | Time between synchronization beacons.                                                                       |
| capability           | Properties list of the access point (AP).                                                                   |
| signal               | Signal strength of the access point (AP).                                                                   |
| last seen [boottime] | Timestamp of the last time the access point (AP) was detected, relative to the scanning device's boot time. |
| last seen [ms ago]   | Timestamp of the last response from the access point (AP).                                                  |
| SSID                 | Name identifier of the access point (AP).                                                                   |
| Supported rates      | Data rates supported by the access point (AP).                                                              |
| DS Parameter set     | Broadcasting channel of the access point (AP).                                                              |

Continued on next page

Continued from previous page

| Item                        | Description                                                        |
|-----------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ERP                         | Provides backward compatibility for PHY rates.                     |
| RSN                         | Protocol ensuring secure wireless communication.                   |
| Extended supported rates    | Additional supported rates beyond the basic eight.                 |
| Country                     | Regulatory domain for the AP, dictating operational parameters.    |
| BSS Load                    | Current load information on the Basic Service Set (BSS).           |
| RM enabled capabilities     | AP's ability to report radio spectrum measurements.                |
| (V)HT capabilities          | Features enhancing data rates for 802.11ac/n networks.             |
| (V)HT operation             | Utilization of (V)HT capabilities in the current setup.            |
| Overlapping BSS scan params | Guides scanning for overlapping BSS to minimize interference.      |
| Extended capabilities       | Additional AP features improving network functions.                |
| WMM                         | Prioritizes network traffic to ensure quality for voice and video. |

Table 9: Detailed Information about WiFi Networks

## 2.5 Network Status

To view information about the interfaces and the routing table, open the *Network* item in the *Status* menu. The upper part of the window displays detailed information about the active interfaces only:

| Interface | Description                                                                       |
|-----------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ethx      | Ethernet interfaces                                                               |
| lanx      | LAN interfaces                                                                    |
| lo        | Local loopback interface                                                          |
| nat64     | Network interface of internal translator gateway between IPv6 and IPv4 addresses. |
| switch0   | SWITCH interface                                                                  |
| wlanx     | WiFi interfaces – if configured                                                   |
| pppx      | PPP interfaces (e.g. PPPoE tunnel – if configured)                                |
| tunx      | OpenVPN tunnel interfaces – if configured                                         |
| ipsecx    | IPSec tunnel interfaces – if configured                                           |
| grex      | GRE tunnel interfaces – if configured                                             |
| wgx       | WireGuard tunnel interfaces – if configured                                       |

Table 10: Description of Interfaces in Network Status

The following information can be displayed for network interfaces:

| Item       | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| HWaddr     | Hardware (unique, MAC) address of a network interface.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| inet addr  | IPv4 address of interface                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| inet6 addr | IPv6 address of interface. There can be more of them for single network interface.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| P-t-P      | IP address of the opposite end (in case of point-to-point connection).                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| Bcast      | Broadcast address                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| Mask       | Mask of network                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| MTU        | Maximum packet size that the equipment is able to transmit.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| Metric     | Number of routers the packet must go through.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| RX         | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>packets</b> – received packets</li> <li>• <b>errors</b> – number of errors</li> <li>• <b>dropped</b> – dropped packets</li> <li>• <b>overruns</b> – incoming packets lost because of overload.</li> <li>• <b>frame</b> – wrong incoming packets because of incorrect packet size.</li> </ul> |

Continued on next page

Continued from previous page

| Item       | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| TX         | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>packets</b> – transmit packets</li> <li>• <b>errors</b> – number of errors</li> <li>• <b>dropped</b> – dropped packets</li> <li>• <b>overruns</b> – outgoing packets lost because of overload.</li> <li>• <b>carrier</b> – wrong outgoing packets with errors resulting from the physical layer.</li> </ul> |
| collisions | Number of collisions on physical layer.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| txqueuelen | Length of buffer (queue) of the network interface.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| RX bytes   | Total number of received bytes.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| TX bytes   | Total number of transmitted bytes.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |

Table 11: Description of Information in Network Status

You may view the status of the mobile network connection on the network status screen.

The *Route Table* is displayed at the bottom of the *Network Status* page. There is *IPv4 Route Table* and *IPv6 Route Table* below.

If the router is connected to the Internet (a default route is defined), the *nat64* network interface is created automatically. This is the NAT64 internal gateway for translating the IPv6 and IPv4 communication. It is used automatically when connected via IPv6 and communicating with IPv4 device or network. It works together with DNS64 running in the router automatically (translation of domain names to IP addresses). The default NAT64 prefix 64:ff9b::/96 is used as you can see in Figure 5 below in the *IPv6 Route Table* section.

Network Status

refresh

Interfaces

eth0

Link encap:Ethernet HWaddr 02:AD:FF:00:00:91  
inet addr:10.64.0.91 Bcast:10.64.3.255 Mask:255.255.252.0  
inet6 addr: fe80::ad:ffff:fe00:91/64 Scope:Link  
inet6 addr: fd00:a40::91/56 Scope:Global  
UP BROADCAST RUNNING MULTICAST MTU:1500 Metric:1  
RX packets:954 errors:0 dropped:0 overruns:0 frame:0  
TX packets:749 errors:0 dropped:0 overruns:0 carrier:0  
collisions:0 txqueuelen:1000  
RX bytes:82340 (80.4 KB) TX bytes:969616 (946.8 KB)

eth1

Link encap:Ethernet HWaddr 02:AD:FF:01:00:91  
inet addr:10.65.0.91 Bcast:10.65.3.255 Mask:255.255.252.0  
inet6 addr: fd00:a41::91/56 Scope:Global  
inet6 addr: fe80::ad:ffff:fe01:91/64 Scope:Link  
UP BROADCAST RUNNING MULTICAST MTU:1500 Metric:1  
RX packets:263 errors:0 dropped:9 overruns:0 frame:0  
TX packets:4 errors:0 dropped:0 overruns:0 carrier:0  
collisions:0 txqueuelen:1000  
RX bytes:14419 (14.0 KB) TX bytes:680 (680.0 B)

eth2

Link encap:Ethernet HWaddr 02:AD:FF:02:00:91  
inet addr:10.66.0.91 Bcast:10.66.3.255 Mask:255.255.252.0  
inet6 addr: fe80::ad:ffff:fe02:91/64 Scope:Link  
inet6 addr: fd00:a42::91/56 Scope:Global  
UP BROADCAST RUNNING MULTICAST MTU:1500 Metric:1  
RX packets:15 errors:0 dropped:0 overruns:0 frame:0  
TX packets:8 errors:0 dropped:0 overruns:0 carrier:0  
collisions:0 txqueuelen:1024  
RX bytes:2234 (2.1 KB) TX bytes:1008 (1008.0 B)

lan1

Link encap:Ethernet HWaddr 02:AD:FF:00:00:91  
inet6 addr: fe80::ad:ffff:fe00:91/64 Scope:Link  
UP BROADCAST RUNNING MULTICAST MTU:1500 Metric:1  
RX packets:967 errors:0 dropped:9 overruns:0 frame:0  
TX packets:753 errors:0 dropped:0 overruns:0 carrier:0  
collisions:0 txqueuelen:1000  
RX bytes:84227 (82.2 KB) TX bytes:970216 (947.4 KB)

switch0

Link encap:Ethernet HWaddr 02:AD:FF:00:00:91  
inet6 addr: fe80::ad:ffff:fe00:91/64 Scope:Link  
UP BROADCAST RUNNING MULTICAST MTU:1500 Metric:1  
RX packets:1230 errors:0 dropped:0 overruns:0 frame:0  
TX packets:764 errors:0 dropped:0 overruns:0 carrier:0  
collisions:0 txqueuelen:1024  
RX bytes:125706 (122.7 KB) TX bytes:977642 (954.7 KB)

Route Table

| Destination     | Gateway         | Genmask         | Flags | Metric | Ref | Use | Iface  |
|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|-------|--------|-----|-----|--------|
| 0.0.0.0         | 192.168.253.254 | 0.0.0.0         | UG    | 0      | 0   | 0   | usb0   |
| 10.64.0.0       | 0.0.0.0         | 255.255.252.0   | U     | 0      | 0   | 0   | eth0   |
| 10.65.0.0       | 0.0.0.0         | 255.255.252.0   | U     | 0      | 0   | 0   | eth1   |
| 10.66.0.0       | 0.0.0.0         | 255.255.252.0   | U     | 0      | 0   | 0   | eth2   |
| 10.70.0.0       | 0.0.0.0         | 255.255.252.0   | U     | 0      | 0   | 0   | wlan0  |
| 10.72.0.0       | 0.0.0.0         | 255.255.252.0   | U     | 0      | 0   | 0   | wlan02 |
| 192.168.253.254 | 0.0.0.0         | 255.255.255.255 | UH    | 0      | 0   | 0   | usb0   |

IPv6 Route Table

| Destination  | Next Hop | Flags | Metric | Ref | Use | Iface |
|--------------|----------|-------|--------|-----|-----|-------|
| 64:ff9b::/96 | ::       | U     | 256    | 1   | 0   | nat64 |
| ff00::/8     | ::       | U     | 256    | 1   | 0   | nat64 |
| ::/0         | ::       | !n    | -1     | 1   | 1   | lo    |

Figure 5: Network Status

### 2.5.1 Connections

On the *Network Status* page, scroll down and click the »Connections« link. A new window listing all active router connections will display, see Figure 6.

| Connections |                |             |                     |                  | refresh |
|-------------|----------------|-------------|---------------------|------------------|---------|
| Protocol    | Source Address | Source Port | Destination Address | Destination Port |         |
| tcp         | 10.64.0.1      | 49566       | 10.64.0.130         | 443              |         |
| tcp         | 10.64.0.1      | 49565       | 10.64.0.130         | 443              |         |
| tcp         | 10.64.0.1      | 49557       | 10.64.0.130         | 443              |         |
| tcp         | 10.64.0.1      | 49563       | 10.64.0.130         | 443              |         |
| tcp         | 10.64.0.1      | 49564       | 10.64.0.130         | 443              |         |
| tcp         | 10.64.0.1      | 49559       | 10.64.0.130         | 443              |         |
| tcp         | 10.64.0.1      | 49570       | 10.64.0.130         | 443              |         |
| tcp         | 10.64.0.1      | 49569       | 10.64.0.130         | 443              |         |
| tcp         | 10.64.0.1      | 49561       | 10.64.0.130         | 443              |         |
| tcp         | 10.64.0.1      | 49560       | 10.64.0.130         | 443              |         |
| tcp         | 10.64.0.1      | 49553       | 10.64.0.130         | 443              |         |
| tcp         | 10.64.0.1      | 49571       | 10.64.0.130         | 443              |         |
| tcp         | 10.64.0.1      | 49567       | 10.64.0.130         | 443              |         |
| tcp         | 10.64.0.1      | 49572       | 10.64.0.130         | 443              |         |
| tcp         | 10.64.0.1      | 49568       | 10.64.0.130         | 443              |         |
| tcp         | 10.64.0.1      | 49562       | 10.64.0.130         | 443              |         |

Figure 6: Connection List

## 2.6 DHCP Status

Information about the DHCP server activity is accessible via the *DHCP* item. The DHCP server automatically configures the client devices connected to the router. The DHCP server assigns each device an IP address, subnet mask, and default gateway (IP address of the router) and DNS server (IP address of the router). DHCPv6 server is supported.

See Figure 7 for the DHCP Status example. Records in the *DHCP Status* window are divided into two parts based on the interface.

| DHCP Status                      |                     |                     |                                               |              | refresh |
|----------------------------------|---------------------|---------------------|-----------------------------------------------|--------------|---------|
| Active DHCP Leases (LAN)         |                     |                     |                                               |              |         |
| IPv4 Address                     | Lease Starts        | Lease Ends          | MAC                                           | Hostname     |         |
| 192.168.2.2                      | 2022-06-14 11:16:30 | 2022-06-14 11:26:30 | aa:bb:cc:dd:ee:ff                             | "PETA-NB"    |         |
| IPv6 Address                     | Lease Starts        | Lease Ends          | IA-NA                                         |              |         |
| 2001:db8::10                     | 2022-06-14 11:20:27 | 2022-06-14 11:30:27 | \235{P\006\000\001\000\001%y\030DP{\235\246SK |              |         |
| Active DHCP Leases (WiFi AP 1)   |                     |                     |                                               |              |         |
| IPv4 Address                     | Lease Starts        | Lease Ends          | MAC                                           | Hostname     |         |
| 192.168.2.2                      | 2022-06-14 11:30:55 | 2022-06-14 11:40:55 | aa:bb:cc:dd:ee:ff                             | "Galaxy-S10" |         |
| No active dynamic DHCPv6 Leases. |                     |                     |                                               |              |         |
| Active DHCP Leases (WiFi AP 2)   |                     |                     |                                               |              |         |
| DHCP server is disabled.         |                     |                     |                                               |              |         |

Figure 7: DHCP Status

The DHCP status window displays the following information on a row for each client in the list. All items are described in Table 12.

| Item         | Description                            |
|--------------|----------------------------------------|
| IPv4 Address | IPv4 address assigned to a client.     |
| IPv6 Address | IPv6 address assigned to a client.     |
| Lease Starts | The time the IP address lease started. |
| Lease Ends   | The time the IP address lease expires. |
| MAC          | MAC address of the client.             |
| Hostname     | Client hostname.                       |
| IA-NA        | IPv6 unique identifier.                |

Table 12: DHCP Status Description



The DHCP status may occasionally display two records for one IP address. It may be caused by resetting the client network interface.

## 2.7 IPsec Status

Selecting the *IPsec* option in the *Status* menu of the web page will bring up the information for any IPsec Tunnels that have been established. If the tunnel has been built correctly, the screen will display **ESTABLISHED** and the number of running IPsec connections **1 up** (orange highlighted in the figure below.) If there is no such text in log (e.g. "0 up"), the tunnel was not created!

The screenshot shows the 'IPsec Status' web page. At the top, there's a header 'IPsec Status' with a 'refresh' button. Below it is a section titled 'IPsec Tunnels Information'. The main content area displays the status of the IKE charon daemon (weakSwan 5.5.3, Linux 3.12.10+, armv7l). It lists uptime (26 minutes), memory usage (sbrk 528384, mmap 0, used 123104, free 405280), worker threads (11 of 16 idle, 5/0/0/0 working, job queue: 0/0/0/0, scheduled: 5), and loaded plugins (charon nonce pem openssl kernel-netlink socket-default stroke updown). It also lists listening IP addresses: 192.168.1.1, 2001:10:7:6::1, and 10.0.0.228. Under 'Connections', it shows ipsec1: 10.0.0.228...%any IKEv2, dpddelay=20s; ipsec1: local: [10.0.0.228] uses pre-shared key authentication; ipsec1: remote: uses pre-shared key authentication; and ipsec1: child: 2001:10:7:6::/64 == 1999:10:7:5::/64 TUNNEL, dpdaction=clear. The 'Security Associations (1 up, 0 connecting):' section is highlighted with an orange box. It shows ipsec1[2]: ESTABLISHED 17 minutes ago, 10.0.0.228[10.0.0.228]...10.0.2.250[10.0.2.250]; ipsec1[2]: IKEv2 SPIs: 7e675f07f05d7434\_i 8625de2fc6f84049\_r\*, pre-shared key reauthentication in 28 minutes; ipsec1[2]: IKE proposal: AES\_CBC\_128/HMAC\_SHA2\_256\_128/PRF\_HMAC\_SHA2\_256/MODP\_3072; ipsec1[2]: INSTALLED, TUNNEL, reqid 2, ESP SPIs: c7247a03\_i c29f5287\_o; ipsec1[2]: AES\_CBC\_128/HMAC\_SHA1\_96, 0 bytes\_i, 0 bytes\_o, rekeying in 30 minutes; and ipsec1[2]: 2001:10:7:6::/64 == 1999:10:7:5::/64.

```

IPsec Status refresh

IPsec Tunnels Information

Status of IKE charon daemon (weakSwan 5.5.3, Linux 3.12.10+, armv7l):
  uptime: 26 minutes, since Nov 09 10:26:10 2017
  malloc: sbrk 528384, mmap 0, used 123104, free 405280
  worker threads: 11 of 16 idle, 5/0/0/0 working, job queue: 0/0/0/0, scheduled: 5
  loaded plugins: charon nonce pem openssl kernel-netlink socket-default stroke updown
Listening IP addresses:
  192.168.1.1
  2001:10:7:6::1
  10.0.0.228
Connections:
  ipsec1: 10.0.0.228...%any IKEv2, dpddelay=20s
  ipsec1: local: [10.0.0.228] uses pre-shared key authentication
  ipsec1: remote: uses pre-shared key authentication
  ipsec1: child: 2001:10:7:6::/64 == 1999:10:7:5::/64 TUNNEL, dpdaction=clear
Security Associations (1 up, 0 connecting):
  ipsec1[2]: ESTABLISHED 17 minutes ago, 10.0.0.228[10.0.0.228]...10.0.2.250[10.0.2.250]
  ipsec1[2]: IKEv2 SPIs: 7e675f07f05d7434_i 8625de2fc6f84049_r*, pre-shared key reauthentication in 28 minutes
  ipsec1[2]: IKE proposal: AES_CBC_128/HMAC_SHA2_256_128/PRF_HMAC_SHA2_256/MODP_3072
  ipsec1[2]: INSTALLED, TUNNEL, reqid 2, ESP SPIs: c7247a03_i c29f5287_o
  ipsec1[2]: AES_CBC_128/HMAC_SHA1_96, 0 bytes_i, 0 bytes_o, rekeying in 30 minutes
  ipsec1[2]: 2001:10:7:6::/64 == 1999:10:7:5::/64

```

Figure 8: IPsec Status

## 2.8 WireGuard Status

Selecting the *WireGuard* option in the *Status* menu of the web page will bring up the information for any WireGuard Tunnels established. In the figure below is an example of the first WireGuard tunnel running.

**WireGuard Tunnel Status**
refresh

**1st WireGuard Tunnel Information**

```

interface: wg1
  public key: Zu5pZz4h05xUDGvcFN9ULr2W0oxzcL6V4Hi+WkyE63E=
  private key: (hidden)
  listening port: 51820

peer: sHvm8R8HLM7hRtmD+/VA8c5aIuDpGfnwq371+0gMVM=
  endpoint: 192.168.7.231:51820
  allowed ips: 10.0.0.0/30, 192.168.133.0/24
  latest handshake: 1 minute, 55 seconds ago
  transfer: 1.44 KiB received, 5.28 KiB sent
  persistent keepalive: every 25 seconds
          
```

**2nd WireGuard Tunnel Information**

*WireGuard is disabled.*

**3rd WireGuard Tunnel Information**

*WireGuard is disabled.*

**4th WireGuard Tunnel Information**

*WireGuard is disabled.*

Figure 9: WireGuard Status Page



The *Latest handshake* time is the time left from the latest successful communication with the opposite tunnel side. This item will not be shown here until there is a tunnel communication (data sent by the client-side or the keepalive data sent when *NAT/Firewall Traversal* is set to *yes*).

## 2.9 DynDNS Status

The router supports Dynamic DNS using a DNS server. If Dynamic DNS is configured, its status can be viewed by selecting the *DynDNS* menu option.



You can use the servers listed below for the Dynamic DNS service. DynDNSv6 can be used when *IP Mode* is set to *IPv6* on the *Services* → *DynDNS* configuration page.

- [www.freedns.afraid.org](http://www.freedns.afraid.org)
- [www.duckdns.org](http://www.duckdns.org)
- [www.noip.com](http://www.noip.com)

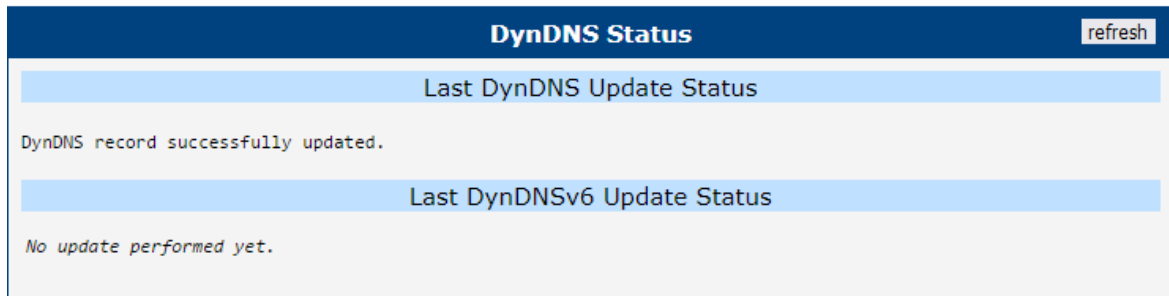


Figure 10: DynDNS Status

When the router detects a DynDNS record update, the dialog displays one or more of the following messages:

- DynDNS client is disabled.
- Invalid username or password.
- Specified hostname doesn't exist.
- Invalid hostname format.
- Hostname exists, but not under specified username.
- No update performed yet.
- DynDNS record is already up to date.
- DynDNS record successfully update.
- DNS error encountered.
- DynDNS server failure.



The router's SIM card must have public IP address assigned or DynDNS will not function correctly.

## 2.10 System Log

 Sensitive data in the report is filtered out for security reasons.

The system log can be viewed by navigating to *Status* → *System Log* in the web interface. This page displays detailed log messages generated by various applications and services running on the router. The amount and detail level of logged data are determined by the *Minimum Severity* setting, which is configured under *Configuration* → *Services* → *Syslog*.

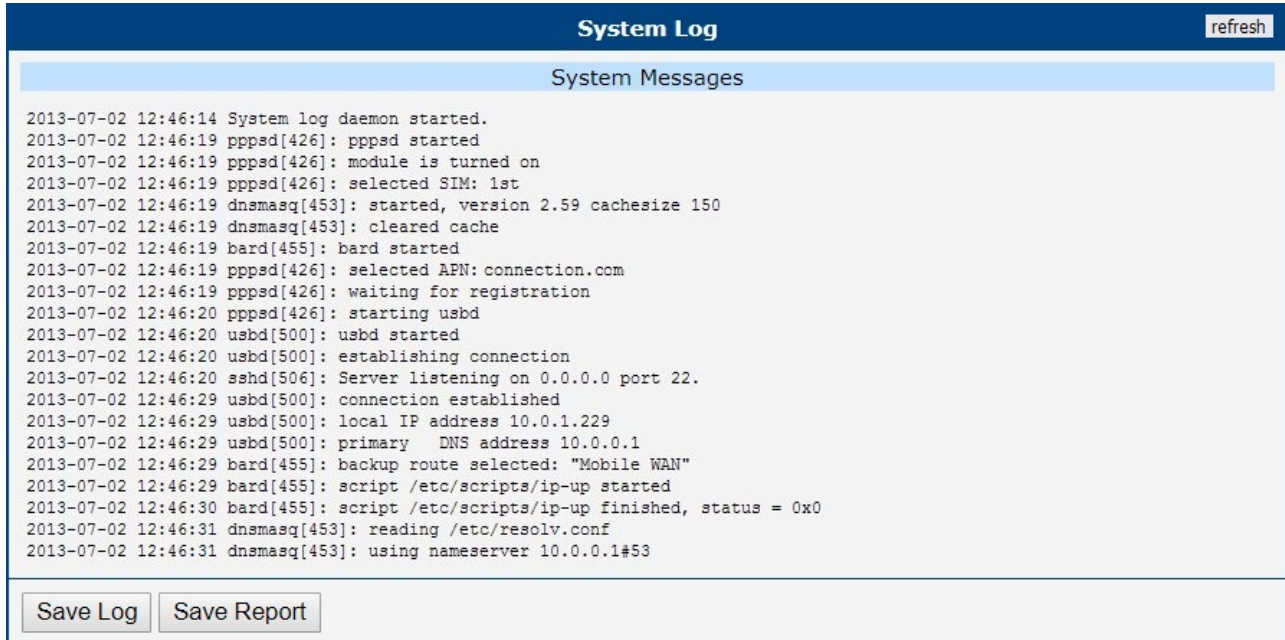
By default, the system log is limited to 1000 KiB. The router manages log data using two files: when the current log file reaches this size limit, the system switches to the other file. If that second file also becomes full, new log entries will begin to overwrite the oldest entries in the first (older) file. You can configure the *Log Size Limit* and other related settings in the Syslog configuration, accessible via *Configuration* → *Services* → *Syslog*.

Use the *Save Log* button to download the current system log to your computer. The log will be saved as a plain text file, typically with a `.log` extension (e.g., `system.log`).

The *Save Report* button generates a comprehensive diagnostic report, which is saved as a plain text file with a `.txt` extension. This report includes:

- General system information
- Network statistics
- Routing tables
- Process tables and details of running processes
- Filesystem information
- The complete system log
- Current router configuration details (non-sensitive parts)

This report is useful for troubleshooting and technical support.



**System Log** refresh

**System Messages**

```

2013-07-02 12:46:14 System log daemon started.
2013-07-02 12:46:19 pppsd[426]: pppsd started
2013-07-02 12:46:19 pppsd[426]: module is turned on
2013-07-02 12:46:19 pppsd[426]: selected SIM: 1st
2013-07-02 12:46:19 dnsmasq[453]: started, version 2.59 cachesize 150
2013-07-02 12:46:19 dnsmasq[453]: cleared cache
2013-07-02 12:46:19 bard[455]: bard started
2013-07-02 12:46:19 pppsd[426]: selected APN: connection.com
2013-07-02 12:46:19 pppsd[426]: waiting for registration
2013-07-02 12:46:20 pppsd[426]: starting usbd
2013-07-02 12:46:20 usbd[500]: usbd started
2013-07-02 12:46:20 usbd[500]: establishing connection
2013-07-02 12:46:20 sshd[506]: Server listening on 0.0.0.0 port 22.
2013-07-02 12:46:29 usbd[500]: connection established
2013-07-02 12:46:29 usbd[500]: local IP address 10.0.1.229
2013-07-02 12:46:29 usbd[500]: primary DNS address 10.0.0.1
2013-07-02 12:46:29 bard[455]: backup route selected: "Mobile WAN"
2013-07-02 12:46:29 bard[455]: script /etc/scripts/ip-up started
2013-07-02 12:46:30 bard[455]: script /etc/scripts/ip-up finished, status = 0x0
2013-07-02 12:46:31 dnsmasq[453]: reading /etc/resolv.conf
2013-07-02 12:46:31 dnsmasq[453]: using nameserver 10.0.0.1#53
  
```

Save Log Save Report

Figure 11: System Log Page

# 3. Configuration

## 3.1 Ethernet

To configure the Local Area Network (LAN), navigate to the *Ethernet* menu item under the *Configuration* section. Expanding the *Ethernet* menu on the left allows you to select the appropriate Ethernet interface for configuration: *ETH0* for the first Ethernet interface and *ETH1* for the second Ethernet interface.

The LAN configuration page is divided into IPv4 and IPv6 sections, as shown in Figure 12. The router supports dual-stack operation, meaning IPv4 and IPv6 can run concurrently. You can configure either one or both. When both IPv4 and IPv6 are enabled, network devices will automatically select the appropriate protocol. The configuration options and key differences between IPv4 and IPv6 are described in the following tables.

| ETH0 Configuration                                         |                                               |                                                |                      |
|------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|----------------------|
|                                                            | IPv4                                          | IPv6                                           |                      |
| DHCP Client                                                | <input type="text" value="disabled"/>         | <input type="text" value="disabled"/>          |                      |
| IP Address                                                 | <input type="text" value="10.64.0.37"/>       | <input type="text" value="fd00:a40::99"/>      |                      |
| Subnet Mask / Prefix                                       | <input type="text" value="255.255.252.0"/>    | <input type="text" value="56"/>                |                      |
| Default Gateway                                            | <input type="text" value="10.64.0.1"/>        | <input type="text" value="fd00:a40::1"/>       |                      |
| Primary DNS Server                                         | <input type="text"/>                          | <input type="text"/>                           |                      |
| Secondary DNS Server                                       | <input type="text"/>                          | <input type="text"/>                           |                      |
| Bridged                                                    | <input type="text" value="no"/>               |                                                |                      |
| Media Type                                                 | <input type="text" value="auto-negotiation"/> |                                                |                      |
| MTU                                                        | <input type="text" value="1500"/>             |                                                | bytes                |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Enable dynamic DHCP leases        |                                               |                                                |                      |
|                                                            | IPv4                                          | IPv6                                           |                      |
| IP Pool Start                                              | <input type="text" value="192.168.1.2"/>      | <input type="text"/>                           |                      |
| IP Pool End                                                | <input type="text" value="192.168.1.254"/>    | <input type="text"/>                           |                      |
| Lease Time                                                 | <input type="text" value="600"/>              | <input type="text" value="600"/>               | sec                  |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Enable static DHCP leases         |                                               |                                                |                      |
|                                                            | MAC Address                                   | IP Address                                     | IPv6 Address         |
| 1                                                          | <input type="text"/>                          | <input type="text"/>                           | <input type="text"/> |
| 2                                                          | <input type="text"/>                          | <input type="text"/>                           | <input type="text"/> |
| Maximum 6 items                                            |                                               |                                                |                      |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Enable IPv6 prefix delegation     |                                               |                                                |                      |
|                                                            | Subnet ID *                                   | <input type="text"/>                           |                      |
|                                                            | Subnet ID Width *                             | <input type="text"/>                           | bits                 |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Enable IEEE 802.1X Authentication |                                               |                                                |                      |
|                                                            | Authentication Method                         | <input type="text" value="EAP-PEAP/MSCHAPv2"/> |                      |
| CA Certificate                                             | <input type="text"/>                          |                                                |                      |
|                                                            | <input type="button" value="Choose File"/>    | No file chosen                                 |                      |
| Local Certificate                                          | <input type="text"/>                          |                                                |                      |
|                                                            | <input type="button" value="Choose File"/>    | No file chosen                                 |                      |
| Local Private Key                                          | <input type="text"/>                          |                                                |                      |
|                                                            | <input type="button" value="Choose File"/>    | No file chosen                                 |                      |
| Identity                                                   | <input type="text"/>                          |                                                |                      |
| Password                                                   | <input type="password"/>                      |                                                |                      |
| * can be blank                                             |                                               |                                                |                      |
| <input type="button" value="Apply"/>                       |                                               |                                                |                      |

Figure 12: LAN Configuration Page

| Item                 | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|----------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| DHCP Client          | <p>Enables or disables the DHCP client function. If in the IPv6 column, the DHCPv6 client is enabled. The DHCPv6 client supports all three methods of obtaining an IPv6 address – SLAAC, stateless DHCPv6, and stateful DHCPv6.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>disabled</b> – The router does not allow automatic allocation of an IP address from a DHCP server in the LAN network.</li> <li>• <b>enabled</b> – The router allows automatic allocation of an IP address from a DHCP server in the LAN network.</li> </ul> |
| IP Address           | A fixed IP address for the Ethernet interface. Use IPv4 notation in the IPv4 column and IPv6 notation in the IPv6 column. Shortened IPv6 notation is supported.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| Subnet Mask / Prefix | Specifies the subnet mask for the IPv4 address. In the IPv6 column, fill in the prefix for the IPv6 address – a number in the range of 0 to 128.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| Default Gateway      | Specifies the IP address of the default gateway. If provided, every packet with a destination not found in the routing table is sent to this IP address. Use the correct IP address notation in both the IPv4 and IPv6 columns.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| Primary DNS Server   | Specifies the primary IP address of the DNS server. When the IP address is not found in the routing table, the router forwards the request to the DNS server specified here. Use the correct IP address notation in both the IPv4 and IPv6 columns.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| Secondary DNS Server | Specifies the secondary IP address of the DNS server.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |

Table 13: Configuration of the Network Interface – IPv4 and IPv6

The *Default Gateway* and *DNS Server* items are only used if the *DHCP Client* is set to *disabled* and if the ETH0 or ETH1 LAN is selected by the *Backup Routes* system as the default route. The selection algorithm is described in section 3.7.

The following three items (in the table below) are global for the configured Ethernet interface. Only one bridge can be active on the router at a time. The *DHCP Client*, *IP Address*, and *Subnet Mask / Prefix* parameters of only one of the interfaces are used for the bridge. The ETH0 LAN has higher priority when both interfaces (ETH0 and ETH1) are added to the bridge. Other interfaces can be added to or removed from an existing bridge at any time. The bridge can be created on demand for such interfaces, but not if it is configured by their respective parameters.



Under certain conditions, the ETH interface may operate as a WAN interface, and the rules defined in the Firewall settings will be applied to it. Details are described in Chapter *Backup Routes* and are demonstrated with examples provided in that chapter.

| Item       | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Bridged    | <p>Activates or deactivates the bridging function on the router.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>no</b> – The bridging function is inactive (default).</li> <li>• <b>yes</b> – The bridging function is active.</li> </ul> <p>See the <b>Bridge Notes</b> below the table for further details.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| Media Type | <p>Specifies the type of duplex and speed used in the network.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Auto-negation</b> – The router automatically sets the best speed and duplex mode of communication according to the network's possibilities.</li> <li>• <b>1000 Mbps Full Duplex</b> – The router communicates at 1000 Mbps, in the full duplex mode.</li> <li>• <b>100 Mbps Full Duplex</b> – The router communicates at 100 Mbps, in the full duplex mode.</li> <li>• <b>100 Mbps Half Duplex</b> – The router communicates at 100 Mbps, in the half duplex mode.</li> <li>• <b>10 Mbps Full Duplex</b> – The router communicates at 10 Mbps, in the full duplex mode.</li> <li>• <b>10 Mbps Half Duplex</b> – The router communicates at 10 Mbps, in the half duplex mode.</li> </ul> |
| MTU        | Maximum Transmission Unit value. Default value is 1500 bytes.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |

Table 14: Configuration of the Network Interface – Global Items

### Bridge Notes

A bridge behaves like a network switch, forwarding packets between interfaces that are connected to it. The Advantech router supports creating a bridge network within Ethernet interfaces or between Ethernet interfaces and Wi-Fi Access Point (AP) interfaces. Once the bridge is configured and established, a new interface named `br0` is created. This interface will appear in the *Status* → *Network* → *Interfaces* section.

If a bridge is configured on two Ethernet interfaces, the `br0` interface will inherit the IP address of the Ethernet interface with the lower index. IP address and subnet configuration of the Ethernet interface with the higher index will be removed. This behavior is consistent regardless of the order in which the interfaces are configured.

To include a Wi-Fi AP interface in the bridge, at least one Ethernet interface must also be part of the bridge configuration. In this case, the IP address of the bridge interface `br0` will again be determined by the Ethernet interface (or interfaces) with the lowest index.

### 3.1.1 DHCP Server

The DHCP server assigns the IP address, gateway IP address (IP address of the router) and IP address of the DNS server (IP address of the router) to the connected clients. If these values are filled in by the user in the configuration form, they will be preferred.

The DHCP server supports static and dynamic assignment of IP addresses. *Dynamic DHCP* assigns clients IP addresses from a defined address space. *Static DHCP* assigns IP addresses that correspond to the MAC addresses of connected clients.



If IPv6 column is filled in, the DHCPv6 server is used. DHCPv6 server offers stateful address configuration to connected clients. Only when the *Subnet Prefix* above is set to 64, the DHCPv6 server offers both – the stateful address configuration and SLAAC (Stateless Address Autoconfiguration).



For DHCPv6 static address assignment to work, DHCPv6 client must use DUID-LL or DUID-LLT types that are derived from its MAC address.



Do not to overlap ranges of static allocated IP addresses with addresses allocated by the dynamic DHCP server. IP address conflicts and incorrect network function can occur if you overlap the ranges.

| Item                       | Description                                                                                               |
|----------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Enable dynamic DHCP leases | Select this option to enable a dynamic DHCP server.                                                       |
| IP Pool Start              | Starting IP address allocated to DHCP clients. Use proper notation in the IPv4 and IPv6 columns.          |
| IP Pool End                | Ending IP address allocated to DHCP clients. Use proper IP address notation in the IPv4 and IPv6 columns. |
| Lease Time                 | Duration (in seconds) for which the assigned IP address remains valid before it can be reassigned.        |

Table 15: Configuration of the Dynamic DHCP Server

| Item                      | Description                                                                                                                                                                      |
|---------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Enable static DHCP leases | Select this option to enable a static DHCP server. You can define up to six rules. A new row for defining the next rule appears automatically after filling in the previous one. |
| MAC Address               | MAC address of a DHCP client.                                                                                                                                                    |
| IPv4 Address              | Assigned IPv4 address. Use proper notation.                                                                                                                                      |
| IPv6 Address              | Assigned IPv6 address. Use proper notation.                                                                                                                                      |

Table 16: Configuration of Static DHCP Server

3.1.2 IPv6 Prefix Delegation



This is an advanced configuration option. IPv6 prefix delegation works automatically with DHCPv6 – use only if different configuration is desired and if you know the consequences.

If you want to override the automatic IPv6 prefix delegation, you can configure it in this form. You have to know your Subnet ID Width (part of IPv6 address), see Figure below for the calculation help – it is an example: 48 bits is Site Prefix, 16 bits is Subnet ID (*Subnet ID Width*) and 64 bits is Interface ID.

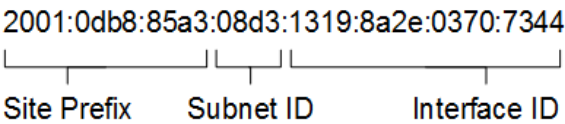


Figure 13: IPv6 Address with Prefix Example

| Item                          | Description                                                                                                         |
|-------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Enable IPv6 prefix delegation | Enables prefix delegation configuration filled-in below.                                                            |
| Subnet ID                     | The decimal value of the Subnet ID of the Ethernet interface. Maximum value depends on the <i>Subnet ID Width</i> . |
| Subnet ID Width               | The maximum <i>Subnet ID Width</i> depends on your Site Prefix – it is the remainder to 64 bits.                    |

Table 17: IPv6 Prefix Delegation Configuration

### 3.1.3 802.1X Authentication to RADIUS Server

**IEEE 802.1X** is an **IEEE Standard** for **port-based Network Access Control** (PNAC), part of the IEEE 802.1 group of networking protocols. It provides an **authentication mechanism** for devices wishing to attach to a LAN or WLAN through "EAP over LAN" or **EAPoL**, which encapsulates the **Extensible Authentication Protocol** (EAP) over IEEE 802.

IEEE 802.1X authentication involves three parties: a **supplicant**, an **authenticator**, and an **authentication server**, illustrated in Figure 14.

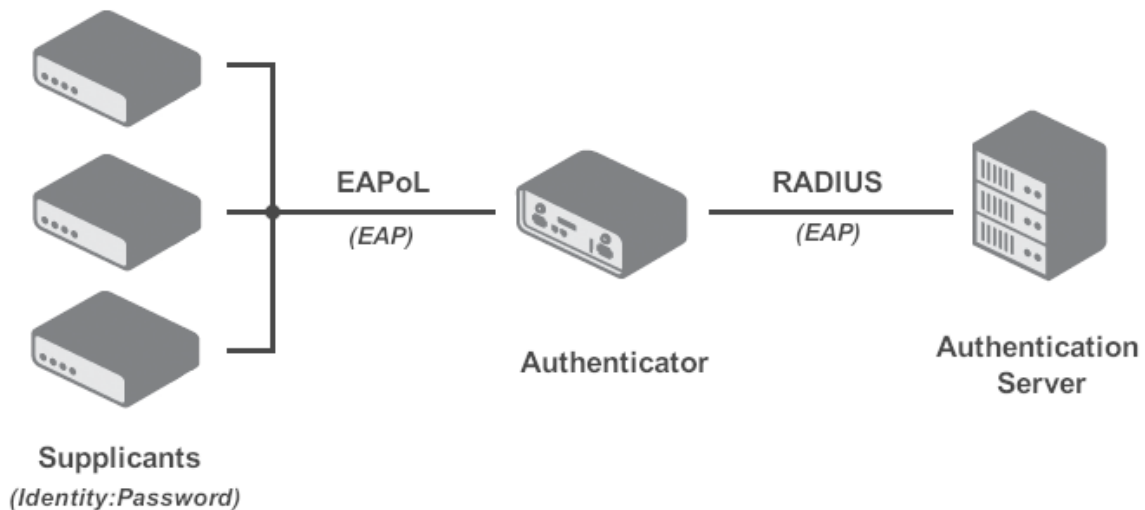


Figure 14: IEEE 802.1X Functional Diagram

- The **supplicant** is a client device (e.g., a laptop) wishing to attach to the LAN/WLAN, also referring to the client software providing credentials to the authenticator.
- The **authenticator** is a network device facilitating the data link between the supplicant and the network, capable of permitting or denying network traffic. This device communicates with the authentication server to decide on network access authorization for a supplicant.
- The **authentication server**, usually a trusted server, handles requests for network access, informing the authenticator about connection permissions and the settings applicable to the client's connection. It commonly runs software supporting the **RADIUS** and **EAP protocols**.

Table 18 summarizes the supported roles and cases for IEEE 802.1X authentication on Advantech routers.



Advantech routers support the roles of supplicant and authenticator only. The authentication server role is not supported.

| Interface | Supplicant Role                                                                     | Authenticator Role                                                                                 |
|-----------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| LAN       | As a built-in feature, configure LAN with 802.1X authentication, see Chapter 3.1.3. | While not a built-in feature, it can be facilitated by the <i>802.1X Authenticator</i> Router App. |
| WiFi      | In Station (STA) mode, see Chapter 3.6.                                             | In Access Point (AP) mode, see Chapter 3.5.                                                        |

Table 18: Supported Roles for IEEE 802.1X Authentication

Authentication (802.1X) to RADIUS server can be enabled in next configuration section. This functionality requires additional setting of identity and certificates as described in the following table.

| Item                              | Description                                                                                                                                                 |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Enable IEEE 802.1X Authentication | Select this option to enable 802.1X Authentication.                                                                                                         |
| Authentication Method             | Select authentication method (EAP-PEAPMSCHAPv2 or EAP-TLS).                                                                                                 |
| CA Certificate                    | Definition of CA certificate for EAP-TLS authentication protocol.                                                                                           |
| Local Certificate                 | Definition of local certificate for EAP-TLS authentication protocol.                                                                                        |
| Local Private Key                 | Definition of local private key for EAP-TLS authentication protocol.                                                                                        |
| Identity                          | User name – identity.                                                                                                                                       |
| Password                          | Access password. This item is available for EAP-PEAPMSCHAPv2 protocol only. Enter valid characters only, see chap. 1.2.1.                                   |
| Local Private Key Password        | Definition of password for private key of EAP-TLS protocol. This item is available for EAP-TLS protocol only. Enter valid characters only, see chap. 1.2.1. |

Table 19: Configuration of 802.1X Authentication

### 3.1.4 LAN Configuration Examples

#### Example 1: IPv4 Dynamic DHCP Server, Default Gateway and DNS Server

- The range of dynamic allocated IPv4 addresses is from 192.168.1.2 to 192.168.1.4.
- The address is allocated for 600 second (10 minutes).
- Default gateway IP address is 192.168.1.20
- DNS server IP address is 192.168.1.20

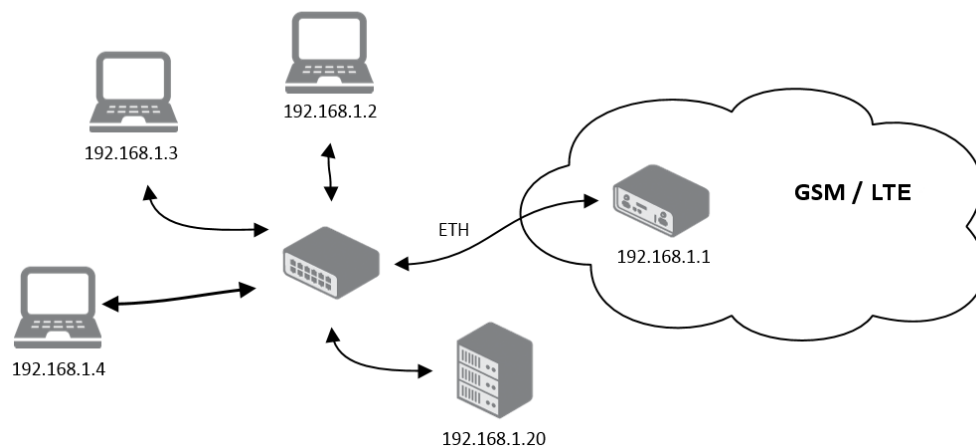


Figure 15: Network Topology for Example 1

| ETH0 Configuration                                             |                                                   |            |              |
|----------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|------------|--------------|
|                                                                | IPv4                                              | IPv6       |              |
| DHCP Client                                                    | disabled ▼                                        | disabled ▼ |              |
| IP Address                                                     | 192.168.1.1                                       |            |              |
| Subnet Mask / Prefix                                           | 255.255.255.0                                     |            |              |
| Default Gateway                                                | 129.168.1.20                                      |            |              |
| Primary DNS Server                                             | 192.168.1.20                                      |            |              |
| Secondary DNS Server                                           |                                                   |            |              |
| Bridged                                                        | no ▼                                              |            |              |
| Media Type                                                     | auto-negotiation ▼                                |            |              |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable dynamic DHCP leases |                                                   |            |              |
|                                                                | IPv4                                              | IPv6       |              |
| IP Pool Start                                                  | 192.168.1.2                                       |            |              |
| IP Pool End                                                    | 192.168.1.4                                       |            |              |
| Lease Time                                                     | 600                                               | 600        | sec          |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Enable static DHCP leases             |                                                   |            |              |
|                                                                | MAC Address                                       | IP Address | IPv6 Address |
| 1                                                              |                                                   |            |              |
| 2                                                              |                                                   |            |              |
| Maximum 6 items                                                |                                                   |            |              |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Enable IPv6 prefix delegation         |                                                   |            |              |
| Subnet ID *                                                    |                                                   |            |              |
| Subnet ID Width *                                              |                                                   | bits       |              |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Enable IEEE 802.1X Authentication     |                                                   |            |              |
| Authentication Method                                          | EAP-PEAP/MSCHAPv2 ▼                               |            |              |
| CA Certificate                                                 | <div></div> <div>Choose File No file chosen</div> |            |              |
| Local Certificate                                              | <div></div> <div>Choose File No file chosen</div> |            |              |
| Local Private Key                                              | <div></div> <div>Choose File No file chosen</div> |            |              |
| Identity                                                       |                                                   |            |              |
| Password                                                       |                                                   |            |              |
| * can be blank                                                 |                                                   |            |              |
| <div>Apply</div>                                               |                                                   |            |              |

Figure 16: LAN Configuration for Example 1

**Example 2: IPv4 Dynamic and Static DHCP server**

- The range of allocated addresses is from 192.168.1.2 to 192.168.1.4.
- The address is allocated for 600 seconds (10 minutes).
- The client with the MAC address 01:23:45:67:89:ab has the IP address 192.168.1.10.
- The client with the MAC address 01:54:68:18:ba:7e has the IP address 192.168.1.11.

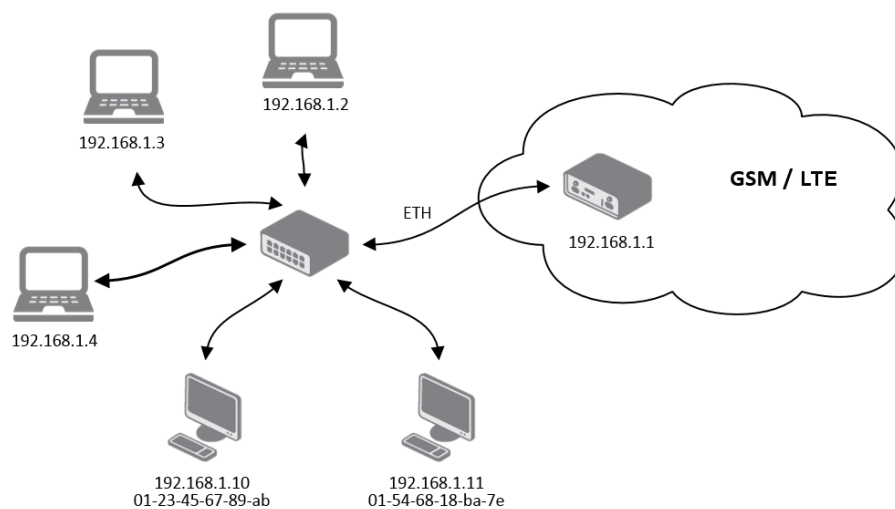


Figure 17: Network Topology for Example 2

| ETH0 Configuration                                             |                                                           |              |              |
|----------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|--------------|--------------|
| DHCP Client                                                    | IPv4                                                      | IPv6         |              |
|                                                                | disabled ▼                                                | disabled ▼   |              |
| IP Address                                                     | 192.168.1.1                                               |              |              |
| Subnet Mask / Prefix                                           | 255.255.255.0                                             |              |              |
| Default Gateway                                                |                                                           |              |              |
| Primary DNS Server                                             |                                                           |              |              |
| Secondary DNS Server                                           |                                                           |              |              |
| Bridged                                                        | no ▼                                                      |              |              |
| Media Type                                                     | auto-negotiation ▼                                        |              |              |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable dynamic DHCP leases |                                                           |              |              |
|                                                                | IPv4                                                      | IPv6         |              |
| IP Pool Start                                                  | 192.168.1.2                                               |              |              |
| IP Pool End                                                    | 192.168.1.4                                               |              |              |
| Lease Time                                                     | 600                                                       | 600          | sec          |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable static DHCP leases  |                                                           |              |              |
|                                                                | MAC Address                                               | IP Address   | IPv6 Address |
| 1                                                              | 01:23:45:67:89:ab                                         | 192.168.1.10 |              |
| 2                                                              | 01:54:68:18:ba:7e                                         | 192.168.1.11 |              |
| Maximum 6 items                                                |                                                           |              |              |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Enable IPv6 prefix delegation         |                                                           |              |              |
| Subnet ID *                                                    |                                                           |              |              |
| Subnet ID Width *                                              |                                                           | bits         |              |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Enable IEEE 802.1X Authentication     |                                                           |              |              |
| Authentication Method                                          | EAP-TLS ▼                                                 |              |              |
| CA Certificate                                                 | <input type="text"/>                                      |              |              |
|                                                                | <input type="button" value="Choose File"/> No file chosen |              |              |
| Local Certificate                                              | <input type="text"/>                                      |              |              |
|                                                                | <input type="button" value="Choose File"/> No file chosen |              |              |
| Local Private Key                                              | <input type="text"/>                                      |              |              |
|                                                                | <input type="button" value="Choose File"/> No file chosen |              |              |
| Identity                                                       | <input type="text"/>                                      |              |              |
| Local Private Key Password                                     | <input type="password"/>                                  |              |              |
| * can be blank                                                 |                                                           |              |              |
| <input type="button" value="Apply"/>                           |                                                           |              |              |

Figure 18: LAN Configuration for Example 2

**Example 3: IPv6 Dynamic DHCP Server**

- The range of dynamic allocated IPv6 addresses is from 2001:db8::1 to 2001:db8::ffff.
- The address is allocated for 600 second (10 minutes).
- The router is still accessible via IPv4 (192.168.1.1).

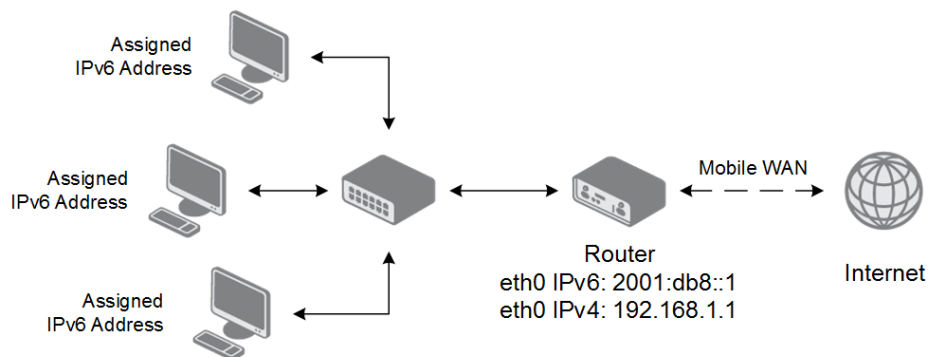


Figure 19: Network Topology for Example 3

| ETH0 Configuration                                             |                    |                |              |
|----------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|----------------|--------------|
| DHCP Client                                                    | IPv4               | IPv6           |              |
|                                                                | disabled ▼         | disabled ▼     |              |
| IP Address                                                     | 192.168.1.1        | 2001:db8::1    |              |
| Subnet Mask / Prefix                                           | 255.255.255.0      | 64             |              |
| Default Gateway                                                |                    |                |              |
| Primary DNS Server                                             |                    |                |              |
| Secondary DNS Server                                           |                    |                |              |
| Bridged                                                        | no ▼               |                |              |
| Media Type                                                     | auto-negotiation ▼ |                |              |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable dynamic DHCP leases |                    |                |              |
|                                                                | IPv4               | IPv6           |              |
| IP Pool Start                                                  |                    | 2001:db8::2    |              |
| IP Pool End                                                    |                    | 2001:db8::ffff |              |
| Lease Time                                                     |                    | 600            | sec          |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Enable static DHCP leases             |                    |                |              |
|                                                                | MAC Address        | IP Address     | IPv6 Address |
| 1                                                              |                    |                |              |
| 2                                                              |                    |                |              |
| Maximum 6 items                                                |                    |                |              |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Enable IPv6 prefix delegation         |                    |                |              |
| Subnet ID *                                                    |                    |                |              |
| Subnet ID Width *                                              |                    | bits           |              |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Enable IEEE 802.1X Authentication     |                    |                |              |
| Authentication Method                                          | EAP-TLS ▼          |                |              |
| CA Certificate                                                 |                    |                |              |
|                                                                | Choose File        | No file chosen |              |
| Local Certificate                                              |                    |                |              |
|                                                                | Choose File        | No file chosen |              |
| Local Private Key                                              |                    |                |              |
|                                                                | Choose File        | No file chosen |              |
| Identity                                                       |                    |                |              |
| Local Private Key Password                                     |                    |                |              |
| * can be blank                                                 |                    |                |              |
| Apply                                                          |                    |                |              |

Figure 20: LAN Configuration for Example 3

## 3.2 VRRP Configuration

Select the *VRRP* menu item to enter the VRRP configuration. There are two submenus which allows to configure up to two instances of VRRP. VRRP protocol (Virtual Router Redundancy Protocol) allows you to transfer packet routing from the main router to a backup router in case the main router fails. (This can be used to provide a wireless cellular backup to a primary wired router in critical applications.) If the *Enable VRRP* is checked, you may set the following parameters.

| Item                      | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|---------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Protocol Version          | Choose version of the VRRP (VRRPv2 or VRRPv3).                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| Virtual Server IP Address | This parameter sets the virtual server IP address. This address must be the same for both the primary and backup routers. Devices on the LAN will use this address as their default gateway IP address.                                                                                                         |
| Virtual Server ID         | This parameter distinguishes one virtual router on the network from another. The main and backup routers must use the same value for this parameter.                                                                                                                                                            |
| Host Priority             | The active router with highest priority set by the parameter Host Priority, is the main router. According to RFC 2338, the main router should have the highest possible priority – 255. The backup router(s) have a priority in the range 1 – 254 (default value is 100). A priority value of 0 is not allowed. |

Table 20: VRRP configuration

You may set the *Check connection* flag in the second part of the window to enable automatic test messages for the cellular network. In some cases, the mobile WAN connection could still be active but the router will not be able to send data over the cellular network. This feature is used to verify that data can be sent over the PPP connection and supplements the normal VRRP message handling. The currently active router (main/backup) will send test messages to the defined *Ping IP Address* at periodic time intervals (*Ping Interval*) and wait for a reply (*Ping Timeout*). If the router does not receive a response to the Ping command, it will retry up to the number of times specified by the *Ping Probes* parameter. After that time, it will switch itself to a backup router until the PPP connection is restored.



You may use the DNS server of the mobile carrier as the destination IP address for the test messages (Pings).

The *Enable traffic monitoring* option can be used to reduce the number of messages that are sent to test the PPP connection. When this parameter is set, the router will monitor the interface for any packets different from a ping. If a response to the packet is received within the timeout specified by the *Ping Timeout* parameter, then the router knows that the connection is still active. If the router does not receive a response within the timeout period, it will attempt to test the mobile WAN connection using standard Ping commands.

| Item            | Description                                                                                      |
|-----------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Ping IP Address | Destinations IP address for the Ping commands. IP Address can not be specified as a domain name. |
| Ping Interval   | Interval in seconds between the outgoing Pings.                                                  |
| Ping Timeout    | Time in seconds to wait for a response to the Ping.                                              |
| Ping Probes     | Maximum number of failed ping requests.                                                          |

Table 21: Check connection

Example of the VRRP protocol:

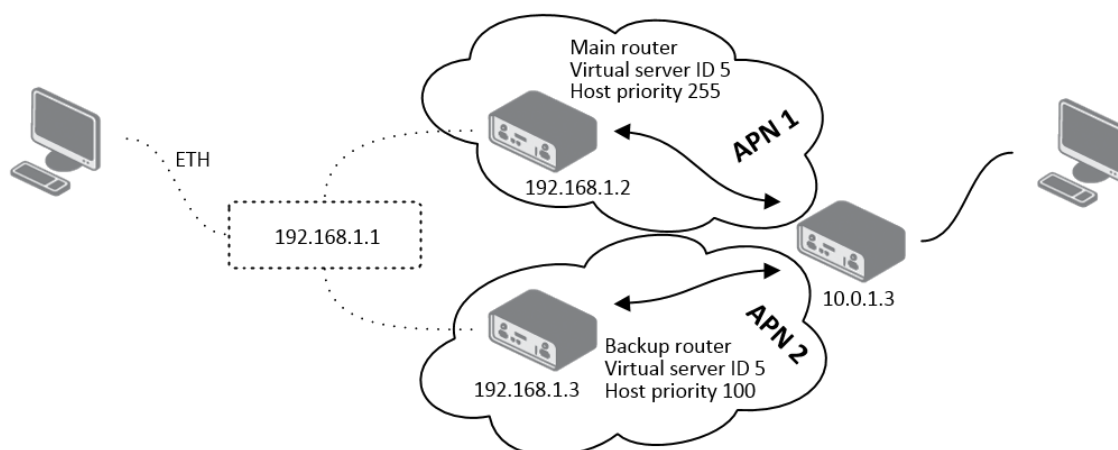


Figure 21: Topology of VRRP configuration example

| 1st VRRP Instance Configuration                              |             |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable 1st VRRP Instance |             |
| Protocol Version                                             | VRRPv2      |
| Virtual Server IP Address                                    | 192.168.1.1 |
| Virtual Server ID                                            | 5           |
| Host Priority                                                | 255         |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Check connection         |             |
| Ping IP Address                                              | 10.0.1.3    |
| Ping Interval                                                | 10 sec      |
| Ping Timeout                                                 | 5 sec       |
| Ping Probes                                                  | 10          |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Enable traffic monitoring           |             |
| <input type="button" value="Apply"/>                         |             |

Figure 22: Example of VRRP configuration – main router

| 1st VRRP Instance Configuration                              |             |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable 1st VRRP Instance |             |
| Protocol Version                                             | VRRPv2      |
| Virtual Server IP Address                                    | 192.168.1.1 |
| Virtual Server ID                                            | 5           |
| Host Priority                                                | 100         |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Check connection         |             |
| Ping IP Address                                              | 10.0.1.3    |
| Ping Interval                                                | 10 sec      |
| Ping Timeout                                                 | 5 sec       |
| Ping Probes                                                  | 10          |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Enable traffic monitoring           |             |
| <input type="button" value="Apply"/>                         |             |

Figure 23: Example of VRRP configuration – backup router

### 3.3 Mobile WAN Configuration

Select the *Mobile WAN* item in the *Configuration* menu section to enter the cellular network configuration page. See *Mobile WAN Configuration* page in Figure 24.

| 1st Mobile WAN Configuration                                                                 |                     |                     |       |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------|---------------------|-------|
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Create connection to mobile network                      |                     |                     |       |
|                                                                                              | 1st SIM card        | 2nd SIM card        |       |
| APN *                                                                                        | advantech.czech.cz  | private             |       |
| Username *                                                                                   |                     |                     |       |
| Password *                                                                                   |                     |                     |       |
| Authentication                                                                               | PAP or CHAP         | PAP or CHAP         |       |
| IP Mode                                                                                      | IPv4                | IPv4                |       |
| IP Address *                                                                                 |                     |                     |       |
| Operator *                                                                                   |                     |                     |       |
| Network Type                                                                                 | automatic selection | automatic selection |       |
| PIN *                                                                                        |                     |                     |       |
| MRU                                                                                          | 1500                | 1500                | bytes |
| MTU                                                                                          | 1500                | 1500                | bytes |
| DNS Settings                                                                                 | get from operator   | get from operator   |       |
| DNS IP Address                                                                               |                     |                     |       |
| DNS IPv6 Address                                                                             |                     |                     |       |
| (The feature of check connection to mobile network is necessary for uninterrupted operation) |                     |                     |       |
| Check Connection                                                                             | disabled            | disabled            |       |
| Ping IP Address                                                                              |                     |                     |       |
| Ping IPv6 Address                                                                            |                     |                     |       |
| Ping Interval                                                                                |                     |                     | sec   |
| Ping Timeout                                                                                 | 10                  | 10                  | sec   |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Enable traffic monitoring                                           |                     |                     |       |
| Data Limit                                                                                   |                     |                     | MB    |
| Warning Threshold                                                                            |                     |                     | %     |
| Accounting Start                                                                             | 1                   | 1                   |       |
| SIM Card                                                                                     | enabled             | enabled             |       |
| Roaming State                                                                                | not applicable      | not applicable      |       |
| Data Limit State                                                                             | not applicable      | not applicable      |       |
| BIND State                                                                                   | not applicable      | not applicable      |       |
| Default SIM Card                                                                             | 1st                 |                     |       |
| Initial State                                                                                | online              |                     |       |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Switch to other SIM card when connection fails                      |                     |                     |       |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Switch to default SIM card after timeout                            |                     |                     |       |
| Initial Timeout                                                                              | 60                  |                     | min   |
| Subsequent Timeout *                                                                         |                     |                     | min   |
| Additive Constant *                                                                          |                     |                     | min   |
| * can be blank                                                                               |                     |                     |       |
| <input type="button" value="Apply"/>                                                         |                     |                     |       |

Figure 24: Mobile WAN Configuration

### 3.3.1 Connection to Mobile Network

If the *Create connection to mobile network* checkbox is checked, then the router will automatically attempt to establish a connection after booting up. You can specify the following parameters for each SIM card separately.

| Item           | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|----------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| APN            | Network identifier (Access Point Name).                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| Username       | The user name used for logging on to the GSM network.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| Password       | The password used for logging on to the GSM network. Enter valid characters only, see chap. 1.2.1!                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| Authentication | Authentication protocol used in the GSM network: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>PAP or CHAP</b> – The router selects the authentication method.</li> <li>• <b>PAP</b> – The router uses the PAP authentication method.</li> <li>• <b>CHAP</b> – The router uses the CHAP authentication method.</li> </ul> |
| IP Mode        | Specifies the version of IP protocol used: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>IPv4</b> – IPv4 protocol is used only (default).</li> <li>• <b>IPv6</b> – IPv6 protocol is used only.</li> <li>• <b>IPv4/IPv6</b> – IPv4 and IPv6 independent dual stack is enabled.</li> </ul>                                  |
| IP Address     | For use in IPv4 and IPv4/IPv6 mode only. Specifies the IPv4 address of the SIM card. You manually enter the IP address only when mobile network carrier has assigned the IP address.                                                                                                                                    |
| Operator       | Specifies the carrier code. You can specify this parameter as the PLMN preferred carrier code.                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| Network type   | Specifies the type of protocol used in the mobile network. <p><b>Automatic selection</b> - The router automatically selects the transmission method according to the availability of transmission technologies. Automatic selection never selects NB-IoT networks. Use NB-IoT in the selection for NB-IoT networks.</p> |
| PIN            | Specifies the PIN used to unlock the SIM card. Use only if this is required by a given SIM card. The SIM card will be blocked after several failed attempts to enter the PIN.                                                                                                                                           |
| MRU            | Maximum Receive Unit – maximum size of packet that the router can receive via Mobile WAN. The default value is 1500 B. Other settings may cause the router to receive data incorrectly. Minimal value in IPv4 and IPv4/IPv6 mode: 128 B. Minimal value in IPv6 mode: 1280 B.                                            |
| MTU            | Maximum Transmission Unit – maximum size of packet that the router can transmit via Mobile WAN. The default value is 1500 B. Other settings may cause the router to transmit data incorrectly. Minimal value in IPv4 and IPv4/IPv6 mode: 128 B. Minimal value in IPv6 mode: 1280 B.                                     |

Table 22: Mobile WAN Connection Configuration



The following list contains tips for working with the *Mobile WAN* configuration form:

- If the MTU size is set incorrectly, then the router will not exceed the data transfer. If the MTU value is set too low, more frequent fragmentation of data will occur. More frequent fragmentation will mean

a higher overhead and also the possibility of packet damage during defragmentation. In contrast, a higher MTU value can cause the network to drop the packet.

- If the *IP address* field is left blank, when the router establishes a connection, the mobile network carrier will automatically assign an IP address. If you assign an IP address manually, then the router will access the network quicker.
- If the **APN** field is left blank, the router automatically selects the APN using the IMSI code of the SIM card. The name of the chosen APN can be found in the System Log.
- If you enter the word `blank` in the *APN* field, then the router interprets the APN as blank.



The correct PIN must be filled in. An incorrect PIN may block the SIM card.

Parameters identified with an asterisk require you to enter the appropriate information only if this information is required by the mobile network carrier.

When the router is unsuccessful in establishing a connection to mobile network, you should verify accuracy of the entered data. Alternatively, you could try a different authentication method or network type.

### 3.3.2 DNS Address Configuration

The *DNS Settings* parameter is designed for easier configuration on the client's side. When this value is set to *get from operator* the router will attempt to automatically obtain an IP address from the primary and secondary DNS server of the mobile network carrier. To specify the IP addresses of the Primary DNS servers manually, on the *DNS Server* pull down list select the value *set manually*. You can also fill-in the IPv4 or IPv6 address of the DNS server (or both) based on the IP Mode option.

### 3.3.3 Check Connection to Mobile Network



Enabling the *Check Connection* function for mobile networks is necessary for uninterrupted and continuous operation of the router.

If the *Check Connection* item is set to *enabled* or *enabled + bind*, the router will be sending the ping requests to the specified domain or IP address configured in *Ping IP Address* or *Ping IPv6 Address* at regular time intervals set up in the *Ping Interval*.

In case of an unsuccessful ping, a new ping will be sent after the *Ping Timeout*. If the ping is unsuccessful three times in a row, the router will terminate the cellular connection and will attempt to establish a new one.

This monitoring function can be set for both SIM cards separately, but running on the active SIM at given time only. Be sure, you configure a functional address as the destination for the ping, for example an IP address of the operator's DNS server.

If the *Check Connection* item is set to the *enabled*, the ping requests are being sent on the basis of the routing table. Therefore, the requests may be sent through any available interface. If you require each ping request to be sent through the network interface, which was created when establishing a connection to the mobile operator, it is necessary to set the *Check Connection* to *enabled + bind*. The *disabled* option deactivates checking of the connection to the mobile network.



A note for routers connected to the **Verizon** carrier (detected by the router):  
The retry interval for connecting to the mobile network prolongs with more retries. First two retries are done after 1 minute. Then the interval prolongs to 2, 8 and 15 minutes. The ninth and every other retry is done in 90 minutes interval.

If *Enable Traffic Monitoring* item is checked, the router will monitor the Mobile WAN traffic without sending the ping requests. If there is no traffic, the router will start sending the ping requests.

| Item              | Description                                                                                                          |
|-------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Ping IP Address   | Specifies the ping queries destination IPv4 address or domain name. Available in IPv4 and IPv4/IPv6 <i>IP Mode</i> . |
| Ping IPv6 Address | Specifies the ping queries destination IPv6 address or domain name. Available in IPv6 and IPv4/IPv6 <i>IP Mode</i> . |
| Ping Interval     | Specifies the time interval between outgoing pings.                                                                  |
| Ping Timeout      | Time in seconds to wait for a Ping response.                                                                         |

Table 23: Check Connection to Mobile Network Configuration

### 3.3.4 Check Connection Example

The figure below displays the following scenario: the connection to the mobile network in IPv4 *IP Mode* is controlled on the address 8.8.8.8 with a time interval of 60 seconds for the first SIM card and on the address www.google.com with the time interval 80 seconds for the second SIM card (for an active SIM only). Because the *Enable traffic monitoring* option is enabled, the control pings are not sent, but the data stream is monitored. The ping will be sent, if the data stream is interrupted.

*(The feature of check connection to mobile network is necessary for uninterrupted operation)*

|                   |           |                |     |
|-------------------|-----------|----------------|-----|
| Check Connection  | enabled ▼ | enabled ▼      |     |
| Ping IP Address   | 8.8.8.8   | www.google.com |     |
| Ping IPv6 Address |           |                |     |
| Ping Interval     | 60        | 80             | sec |
| Ping Timeout      | 60        | 80             | sec |

☒ Enable traffic monitoring

Figure 25: Check Connection Example

### 3.3.5 Data Limit Configuration

| Item              | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|-------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Data Limit        | Specifies the maximum expected amount of data transmitted (sent and received) over mobile interface in one billing period (one month). Maximum value is 2 TB (2097152 MB).                                                                                               |
| Warning Threshold | Specifies a percentage of the "Data Limit" in the range of 50 % to 99 %. If the given percentage data limit is exceeded, the router will send an SMS in the following form; <i>Router has exceeded (value of Warning Threshold) of data limit.</i>                       |
| Accounting Start  | Specifies the day of the month in which the billing cycle starts for a given SIM card. When the service provider that issued the SIM card specifies the start of the billing period, the router will begin to count the amount of data transferred starting on this day. |

Table 24: Data Limit Configuration



If the parameter *Data Limit State* (see below) is set to *not applicable* or *Send SMS when data limit is exceeded* in *SMS Configuration* is not selected, the *Data Limit* set here will be ignored.

### 3.3.6 Switch between SIM Cards Configuration

In the lower part of the configuration form you can specify the rules for toggling between the two SIM cards.



The router will automatically toggle between the SIM cards and their individual setups depending on the configuration settings specified here (manual permission, roaming, data limit, binary input state). Note that the SIM card selected for connection establishment is the result of the logical product (AND) of the configuration here (table below).

| Item          | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|---------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| SIM Card      | <p>Enable or disable the use of a SIM card. If you set all the SIM cards to <i>disabled</i>, this means that the entire cellular module is disabled.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>enabled</b> – It is possible to use the SIM card.</li> <li>• <b>disabled</b> – Never use the SIM card, the usage of this SIM is forbidden.</li> </ul>   |
| Roaming State | <p>Configure the use of SIM cards based on roaming. This roaming feature has to be activated for the SIM card on which it is enabled!</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>not applicable</b> – It is possible to use the SIM card everywhere.</li> <li>• <b>home network only</b> – Only use the SIM card if roaming is not detected.</li> </ul> |

Continued on next page

Continued from previous page

| Item             | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Data Limit State | <p>Configure the use of SIM cards based on the Data Limit set above:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>not applicable</b> – It is possible to use the SIM regardless of the limit.</li> <li>• <b>not exceeded</b> – Use the SIM card only if the Data Limit (set above) has not been exceeded.</li> </ul>                                                                                                         |
| BINx State       | <p>Configure the use of SIM cards based on binary input x state, where x is the input number:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>not applicable</b> – It is possible to use the SIM regardless of BINx state.</li> <li>• <b>on</b> – Only use the SIM card if the BINx state is logical 0 – voltage present.</li> <li>• <b>off</b> – Only use the SIM card if the BINx state is logical 1 – no voltage.</li> </ul> |

Table 25: Switch between SIM cards configuration

Use the following parameters to specify the decision making of SIM card switching in the cellular module.

| Item                                           | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Default SIM Card                               | <p>Specifies the modules' default SIM card. The router will attempt to establish a connection to mobile network using this default.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>1st</b> – The 1st SIM card is the default one.</li> <li>• <b>2nd</b> – The 2nd SIM card is the default one.</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| Initial State                                  | <p>Specifies the action of the cellular module after the SIM card has been selected.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>online</b> – establish connection to the mobile network after the SIM card has been selected (default).</li> <li>• <b>offline</b> – go to the off-line mode after the SIM card has been selected.</li> </ul> <p>Note: If offline, you can change this initial state by SMS message only – see <i>SMS Configuration</i>. The cellular module will also go into off-line mode if none of the SIM cards are not selected.</p> |
| Switch to other SIM card when connection fails | <p>Applicable only when connection is established on the default SIM card and then fails. If the connection failure is detected by <i>Check Connection</i> feature above, the router will switch to the backup SIM card.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| Switch to default SIM card after timeout       | <p>If enabled, after timeout, the router will attempt to switch back to the default SIM card. This applies only when there is default SIM card defined and the backup SIM is selected because of a <b>failure</b> of the default one or if <b>roaming</b> settings cause the switch. This feature is available only when <i>Switch to other SIM card when connection fails</i> is enabled.</p>                                                                                                                                                                  |

Continued on next page

Continued from previous page

| Item               | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|--------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Initial Timeout    | Specifies the length of time that the router waits before the first attempt to revert to the default SIM card, the range of this parameter is from 1 to 10000 minutes.                                                                                                                                   |
| Subsequent Timeout | Specifies the length of time that the router waits after an unsuccessful attempt to revert to the default SIM card, the range is from 1 to 10000 min.                                                                                                                                                    |
| Additive Constant  | Specifies the length of time that the router waits for any further attempts to revert to the default SIM card. This length time is the sum of the time specified in the "Subsequent Timeout" parameter and the time specified in this parameter. The range in this parameter is from 1 to 10000 minutes. |

Table 26: Parameters for SIM card switching

### 3.3.7 Examples of SIM Card Switching Configuration

#### Example 1: Timeout Configuration

Mark the *Switch to default SIM card after timeout* check box, and fill-in the following values:

|                                     |                                                |
|-------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | Switch to other SIM card when connection fails |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | Switch to default SIM card after timeout       |
| Initial Timeout                     | <input type="text" value="60"/> min            |
| Subsequent Timeout *                | <input type="text" value="30"/> min            |
| Additive Constant *                 | <input type="text" value="20"/> min            |

Figure 26: Configuration for SIM card switching Example 1

The first attempt to change to the default SIM card is carried out after 60 minutes. When the first attempt fails, a second attempt is made after 30 minutes. A third attempt is made after 50 minutes (30+20). A fourth attempt is made after 70 minutes (30+20+20).

**Example 2: Data Limit Switching**

The following configuration illustrates a scenario in which the router changes to the second SIM card after exceeding the data limit of 800 MB on the first (default) SIM card. The router sends a SMS upon reaching 400 MB (this settings has to be enabled on the *SMS Configuration* page). The accounting period starts on the 18th day of the month.

|                                                                                                                                              |                  |                  |     |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------|------------------|-----|
| Data Limit                                                                                                                                   | 800              |                  | MB  |
| Warning Threshold                                                                                                                            | 50               |                  | %   |
| Accounting Start                                                                                                                             | 18               | 1                |     |
| SIM Card                                                                                                                                     | enabled ▼        | enabled ▼        |     |
| Roaming State                                                                                                                                | not applicable ▼ | not applicable ▼ |     |
| Data Limit State                                                                                                                             | not applicable ▼ | not applicable ▼ |     |
| BIND State                                                                                                                                   | not applicable ▼ | not applicable ▼ |     |
| Default SIM Card                                                                                                                             | 1st ▼            |                  |     |
| Initial State                                                                                                                                | online ▼         |                  |     |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Switch to other SIM card when connection fails<br><input type="checkbox"/> Switch to default SIM card after timeout |                  |                  |     |
| Initial Timeout                                                                                                                              |                  |                  | min |
| Subsequent Timeout *                                                                                                                         |                  |                  | min |
| Additive Constant *                                                                                                                          |                  |                  | min |

Figure 27: Configuration for SIM card switching Example 2

3.4 PPPoE Configuration

PPPoE (Point-to-Point over Ethernet) is a network protocol which encapsulates PPP frames into Ethernet frames. The router uses the PPPoE client to connect to devices supporting a PPPoE bridge or server. The bridge or server is typically an ADSL router.

To open the *PPPoE Configuration* page, select the *PPPoE* menu item. If you mark the *Create PPPoE connection* check box, then the router attempts to establish a PPPoE connection after boot up. After connecting, the router obtains the IP address of the device to which it is connected. The communications from a device behind the PPPoE server is forwarded to the router.

PPPoE Configuration

☐ Create PPPoE connection

Username \*

Password \*

Authentication

PAP or CHAP

IP Mode

IPv4

MRU

1492

bytes

MTU

1492

bytes

Clamp Max. Segment Size

☒

DNS Settings

get from server

DNS IP Address

DNS IPv6 Address

Interface

ETH1

VLAN Tagging

no

VLAN ID

Apply

Figure 28: PPPoE Configuration

| Item                    | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|-------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Create PPPoE connection | Enable PPPoE on the selected interface.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| Username                | Username for secure access to PPPoE.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| Password                | Password for secure access to PPPoE. Enter valid characters only, see chap. 1.2.1!                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| Authentication          | Authentication protocol in GSM network. <div><ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <b>PAP or CHAP</b> – The router selects the authentication method.</li><li>• <b>PAP</b> – The router uses the PAP authentication method.</li><li>• <b>CHAP</b> – The router uses the CHAP authentication method.</li></ul></div> |

Continued on next page

Continued from previous page

| Item                      | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|---------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| IP Mode                   | Specifies the version of IP protocol: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>IPv4</b> – IPv4 protocol is used only (default).</li> <li>• <b>IPv6</b> – IPv6 protocol is used only.</li> <li>• <b>IPv4/IPv6</b> – IPv4 and IPv6 dual stack is enabled.</li> </ul>                                                         |
| MRU                       | Specifies the Maximum Receiving Unit. The MRU identifies the maximum packet size, that the router can receive via PPPoE. The default value is 1492 B (bytes). Other settings can cause incorrect data transmission. Minimal value in IPv4 and IPv4/IPv6 mode is 128 B. Minimal value in IPv6 mode is 1280 B.                  |
| MTU                       | Specifies the Maximum Transmission Unit. The MTU identifies the maximum packet size, that the router can transfer in a given environment. The default value is 1492 B (bytes). Other settings can cause incorrect data transmission. Minimal value in IPv4 and IPv4/IPv6 mode is 128 B. Minimal value in IPv6 mode is 1280 B. |
| Clamp Max. Segment Size   | Enhances network performance and stability by adjusting the Maximum Segment Size (MSS) of TCP packets to align with the network connection's Path Maximum Transmission Unit (PMTU). It is enabled by default.                                                                                                                 |
| DNS Settings              | Can be set to obtain the DNS address from the server or to set it manually.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| Primary DNS Server        | Primary IPv4 address of the DNS server.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Primary IPv6 DNS Server   | Primary IPv6 address of the DNS server.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Secondary DNS Server      | Secondary IPv4 address of the DNS server.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| Secondary IPv6 DNS Server | Secondary IPv6 address of the DNS server.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |

Table 27: PPPoE configuration



Setting an incorrect packet size value (MRU, MTU) can cause unsuccessful transmission.

## 3.5 WiFi Access Point

- This feature is available only on routers equipped with a WiFi module.
- The router supports the configuration of two separate WLANs (**Multiple SSIDs**).
- **Multi-role mode** allows the router to function as both an access point (AP) and a station (STA) simultaneously. However, multichannel mode is not supported, meaning the AP and STA must operate on the same channel. Please note that only one AP can be active alongside the STA in operation.
- **RADIUS** (Remote Authentication Dial-In User Service), a networking protocol for centralized Authentication, Authorization, and Accounting (AAA) management, is supported for WiFi. The router acts as a RADIUS client (not a server), typically as a WiFi AP (Access Point) communicating with a RADIUS server.



To enable WiFi access point mode, check the *Enable WiFi AP* box at the top of the *Configuration* → *WiFi* → *Access Point 1* or *Access Point 2* configuration pages. In this mode, the router functions as an access point, allowing other devices in *station (STA)* mode to connect.

The table below lists the available configuration options.

| Item                          | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Enable WiFi AP                | Enables the WiFi access point (AP).                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| IP Address                    | A fixed IP address for the WiFi interface. Use IPv4 notation in the IPv4 column and IPv6 notation in the IPv6 column. Shortened IPv6 notation is supported.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| Subnet Mask / Prefix          | Specifies a Subnet Mask for the IPv4 address. In the IPv6 column, enter the prefix length (0 to 128).                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| Bridged                       | <p>Activates bridge mode:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>no</b> – Bridged mode is disabled (default). The WLAN network is separate from the LAN.</li> <li>• <b>yes</b> – Bridged mode is enabled. The WLAN network is connected to one or more LAN networks. In this case, most of the setting in this table are ignored, and the router uses the settings of the selected network interface (LAN).</li> </ul> <p>See the <b>Bridge Notes</b> in Chapter 3.1 for further details.</p> |
| Enable dynamic DHCP leases    | Enables dynamic allocation of IP addresses using the DHCP (DHCPv6) server.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| IP Pool Start                 | Beginning of the range of IP address range assigned to DHCP clients. Use proper notation for IPv4 and IPv6 column.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| IP Pool End                   | End of the range of IP address range assigned to DHCP clients. Use proper notation for IPv4 and IPv6 column.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| Lease Time                    | Duration (in seconds) for which a client can use the assigned IP address.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| Enable IPv6 prefix delegation | Enables prefix delegation for IPv6.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| Subnet ID                     | The decimal value of the Subnet ID for the Ethernet inter face. The maximum value depends on the Subnet ID Width.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |

Continued on next page

Continued from previous page

| Item                      | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|---------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Subnet ID Width           | Maximum Subnet ID Width, which depends on your site's configuration. The remaining bits to reach 64 are used for the prefix.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| SSID                      | The unique identifier (SSID) of the WiFi network.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Broadcast SSID            | Defines how the SSID is broadcast in the beacon frame. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Enabled</b> – SSID is included in the beacon frame</li> <li>• <b>Zero length</b> – The beacon frame does not include the SSID. Requests for sending beacon frame are ignored.</li> <li>• <b>Clear</b> – SSID characters in beacon frames are replaced with zeros, maintaining the original length. Requests for beacon frames are ignored.</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| SSID Isolation            | When enabled, and a zone is selected, WiFi clients connected to this access point cannot communicate with clients connected to another access point that has a different zone selected. However, clients can still communicate with other clients connected to the same access point unless <i>Client Isolation</i> is also enabled.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| Client Isolation          | If enabled, the access point isolates each connected client, preventing them from communicating with each other (they are in separate networks and cannot PING each other). If disabled, the access point functions like a switch, allowing clients on the same LAN to see and communicate with each other.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| WMM                       | Enables basic QoS (Quality of Service) for WiFi networks. This feature does not guarantee network throughput but is suitable for simple applications that require QoS.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| Country Code              | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The country code where the router is installed. This code must be entered in ISO 3166-1 alpha-2 format.</li> <li>• For proper and optimal utilization of WiFi functionality in the given region, <b>always set the correct country code.</b></li> <li>• <b>After changing the country code, save the settings by clicking the <i>Apply</i> button, then continue with further WiFi configuration.</b></li> <li>• If the country code is not specified, it will use "NL" for ICR-16xx-EU and "CN" for ICR-16xx-CN as the default country code.</li> <li>• If an incorrect country code is entered, the router may violate country-specific regulations regarding the use of WiFi parameters.</li> <li>• This option is not available for NAM routers, where the "US" country code is set by default.</li> </ul> |
| Follow STA radio settings | When enabled, and the STA is connected to a foreign AP, the access point's radio settings will automatically adjust to match those of the connected foreign AP.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |

Continued on next page

Continued from previous page

| Item                   | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| HW Mode <sup>1</sup>   | <p>Specifies the WiFi standard (HW mode) that will be supported by the WiFi access point.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• IEEE 802.11b (2.4 GHz)</li> <li>• IEEE 802.11b+g (2.4 GHz)</li> <li>• IEEE 802.11b+g+n (2.4 GHz)</li> <li>• IEEE 802.11a (5 GHz)</li> <li>• IEEE 802.11a+n (5 GHz)</li> <li>• IEEE 802.11ac (5 GHz)</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| Channel <sup>1</sup>   | <p>The channel on which the WiFi access point (AP) is transmitting. The available channels depend on the selected <i>Country Code</i>. To view the channels available for a different country code, change the country code, click <i>Apply</i>, and the channel list will update accordingly.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| Bandwidth <sup>1</sup> | <p>Allows you to select the transfer bandwidth. Note that this option may be unavailable for some hardware modes. If a selected bandwidth is already occupied, the router may automatically switch to a lower bandwidth.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| Short GI               | <p>This option, available for HW mode 802.11n, enables the use of a short guard interval (GI) of 400 ns instead of the standard 800 ns, improving data transmission efficiency.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| Authentication         | <p>Defines access control and authorization methods for users in the WiFi network.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Open</b> – No authentication required (free access point).</li> <li>• <b>Shared</b> – Basic authentication using a WEP key.</li> <li>• <b>WPA-PSK</b> – Pre-Shared Key (PSK) authentication with WPA encryption.</li> <li>• <b>WPA2-PSK</b> – Pre-Shared Key (PSK) authentication using WPA2 encryption with AES.</li> <li>• <b>WPA3-PSK</b> – Pre-Shared Key (PSK) authentication using WPA3 encryption with AES.</li> <li>• <b>WPA-Enterprise</b> – RADIUS-based authentication using an external server with username/password.</li> <li>• <b>WPA2-Enterprise</b> – RADIUS-based authentication with stronger encryption.</li> </ul> |
| Encryption             | <p>Specifies the type of data encryption used in the WiFi network.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>None</b> – No data encryption.</li> <li>• <b>WEP</b> – Wired Equivalent Privacy (WEP) encryption with static keys. This method is considered insecure and may not be available on some models.</li> <li>• <b>TKIP</b> – Temporal Key Integrity Protocol (TKIP), used for <i>WPA-PSK</i> and <i>WPA2-PSK</i> authentication.</li> <li>• <b>AES</b> – Advanced Encryption Standard (AES), used for <i>WPA2-PSK</i> authentication.</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                             |

Continued on next page

Continued from previous page

| Item                  | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| WEP Key Type          | Specifies the WEP key format. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>ASCII</b> – WEP key in ASCII format.</li> <li>• <b>HEX</b> – WEP key in hexadecimal format.</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| WEP Default Key       | Specifies the default WEP key.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| WEP Key 1–4           | Allows entry of up to four different WEP keys. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>ASCII format:</b> The WEP key must be entered in quotes and can have the following lengths: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– 5 characters (40-bit WEP key)</li> <li>– 13 characters (104-bit WEP key)</li> </ul> </li> <li>• <b>Hexadecimal format:</b> The WEP key must be entered using hexadecimal digits and can have the following lengths: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– 10 hex digits (40-bit WEP key)</li> <li>– 26 hex digits (104-bit WEP key)</li> </ul> </li> </ul> |
| WPA PSK Type          | Specifies the available key options for WPA-PSK authentication. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>256-bit secret</b> – A 64-character hexadecimal key.</li> <li>• <b>ASCII passphrase</b> – An alphanumeric passphrase of 8 to 63 characters.</li> <li>• <b>PSK File</b> – Absolute path to a file containing a list of key-MAC address pairs.</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| WPA PSK               | The key used for WPA-PSK authentication. This key must match the selected WPA PSK type: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>256-bit secret</b> – A 64-character hexadecimal string.</li> <li>• <b>ASCII passphrase</b> – An 8 to 63-character passphrase.</li> <li>• <b>PSK File</b> – The absolute path to a file containing PSK key and MAC address pairs.</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| RADIUS Auth Server IP | IPv4 or IPv6 address of the RADIUS authentication server. This is required when using RADIUS-based authentication.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| RADIUS Auth Password  | Access password for the RADIUS authentication server. Required when using RADIUS authentication.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| RADIUS Auth Port      | Port number of the RADIUS authentication server. The default value is 1812. Required when using RADIUS authentication.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| RADIUS Acct Server IP | IPv4 or IPv6 address of the RADIUS accounting server. Define this only if it differs from the authentication server. Required when using RADIUS authentication.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| RADIUS Acct Password  | Access password for the RADIUS accounting server. Define this only if it differs from the authentication server. Required when using RADIUS authentication.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| RADIUS Acct Port      | Port number of the RADIUS accounting server. The default value is 1813. Define this only if it differs from the authentication server. Required when using RADIUS authentication.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |

Continued on next page

Continued from previous page

| Item             | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Access List      | <p>Defines the mode of the Access/Deny list.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b> – The Access/Deny list is not used.</li> <li>• <b>Accept</b> – Only clients in the Accept/Deny list can access the network.</li> <li>• <b>Deny</b> – Clients in the Accept/Deny list cannot access the network.</li> </ul>                                       |
| Accept/Deny List | List of client MAC addresses for network access control. Each MAC address should be entered on a new line.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| Syslog Level     | <p>Defines the logging level used when writing to the system log.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Verbose debugging</b> – The highest level of logging.</li> <li>• <b>Debugging</b></li> <li>• <b>Informational</b> – The default logging level.</li> <li>• <b>Notification</b></li> <li>• <b>Warning</b> – The lowest level of system logging.</li> </ul> |
| Extra options    | Allows the user to define additional parameters for <code>hostapd</code> . Options are added as-is to the end of the configuration file. For more information, refer to the <code>hostapd.conf</code> Linux man page. Use this option only if you are familiar with its functionality.                                                                                     |

Table 28: WiFi Configuration Items Description

<sup>1</sup>The availability of configuration options may vary depending on the specific WiFi module and can be affected by the selected country code.

| WiFi AP 1 Configuration                                                               |                |         |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------|---------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> Enable WiFi AP 1                                             |                |         |
| IP Address                                                                            | IPv4           | IPv6    |
| Subnet Mask / Prefix                                                                  |                |         |
| Bridged                                                                               | no             |         |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Enable dynamic DHCP leases                                   |                |         |
| IP Pool Start                                                                         | IPv4           | IPv6    |
| IP Pool End                                                                           |                |         |
| Lease Time                                                                            | 600            | 600 sec |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Enable IPv6 prefix delegation                                |                |         |
| Subnet ID *                                                                           |                |         |
| Subnet ID Width *                                                                     | bits           |         |
| SSID                                                                                  |                |         |
| Broadcast SSID                                                                        | enabled        |         |
| SSID Isolation                                                                        | disabled       |         |
| Client Isolation                                                                      | disabled       |         |
| WMM                                                                                   | disabled       |         |
| <i>The following radio settings are common for all Access Points on WiFi module 1</i> |                |         |
| Country Code *                                                                        |                |         |
| HW Mode                                                                               | IEEE 802.11b   |         |
| Channel                                                                               | 1              |         |
| Bandwidth                                                                             | 20 MHz         |         |
| Short GI                                                                              | disabled       |         |
| Authentication                                                                        | open           |         |
| Encryption                                                                            | none           |         |
| WEP Key Type                                                                          | ASCII          |         |
| WEP Default Key                                                                       | 1              |         |
| WEP Key 1                                                                             |                |         |
| WEP Key 2                                                                             |                |         |
| WEP Key 3                                                                             |                |         |
| WEP Key 4                                                                             |                |         |
| WPA PSK Type                                                                          | 256-bit secret |         |
| WPA PSK                                                                               |                |         |
| RADIUS Auth Server IP                                                                 |                |         |
| RADIUS Auth Password                                                                  |                |         |
| RADIUS Auth Port *                                                                    | 1812           |         |
| RADIUS Acct Server IP *                                                               |                |         |
| RADIUS Acct Password *                                                                |                |         |
| RADIUS Acct Port *                                                                    | 1813           |         |
| Access List                                                                           | disabled       |         |
| Accept/Deny List                                                                      |                |         |
| Syslog Level                                                                          | informational  |         |
| Extra options *                                                                       |                |         |
| * can be blank                                                                        |                |         |
| <input type="button" value="Apply"/>                                                  |                |         |

Figure 29: WiFi Access Point Configuration Page

## 3.6 WiFi Station



- This feature is available only on routers equipped with a WiFi module.
- The WiFi module supports **multi-role mode**, allowing the router to operate as both an access point (AP) and a station (STA) simultaneously. However, **multichannel mode is not supported**, meaning the AP and STA must operate on the same channel.
- In WiFi STA mode, only the authentication methods **EAP-PEAP/MSCHAPv2** (both PEAPv0 and PEAPv1) and **EAP-TLS** are supported.

Activate WiFi station mode by checking the *Enable WiFi STA* box at the top of the *Configuration → WiFi → Station* configuration page. In this mode, the router functions as a client station, receiving data packets from the available access point (AP) and transmitting data from its wired connection over the WiFi network.

| WiFi STA Configuration                   |                               |
|------------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> Enable WiFi STA |                               |
| DHCP Client                              | IPv4: enabled   IPv6: enabled |
| IP Address                               |                               |
| Subnet Mask / Prefix                     |                               |
| Default Gateway                          |                               |
| Primary DNS Server                       |                               |
| Secondary DNS Server                     |                               |
| SSID                                     |                               |
| Probe Hidden SSID                        | disabled                      |
| Country Code *                           |                               |
| Authentication                           | open                          |
| Encryption                               | none                          |
| WEP Key Type                             | ASCII                         |
| WEP Default Key                          | 1                             |
| WEP Key 1                                |                               |
| WEP Key 2                                |                               |
| WEP Key 3                                |                               |
| WEP Key 4                                |                               |
| WPA PSK Type                             | 256-bit secret                |
| WPA PSK                                  |                               |
| RADIUS EAP Authentication                | EAP-PEAP/MSCHAPv2             |
| RADIUS CA Certificate                    | Choose File   No file chosen  |
| RADIUS Local Certificate                 | Choose File   No file chosen  |
| RADIUS Local Private Key                 | Choose File   No file chosen  |
| RADIUS Identity                          |                               |
| RADIUS Password                          |                               |
| Syslog Level                             | informational                 |
| Extra options *                          |                               |
| * can be blank                           |                               |
| <input type="button" value="Apply"/>     |                               |

Figure 30: WiFi Station Configuration Page

| Item                 | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|----------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Enable WiFi STA      | Enables the WiFi station (STA) mode.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| DHCP Client          | Activates or deactivates the DHCP client. In the IPv6 column, this enables the DHCPv6 client.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| IP Address           | Specifies a fixed IP address for the WiFi interface. Use IPv4 notation in the IPv4 column and IPv6 notation in the IPv6 column. Shortened IPv6 notation is supported.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| Subnet Mask / Prefix | Defines a subnet mask for the IPv4 address. In the IPv6 column, enter the prefix length (a number between 0 and 128).                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| Default Gateway      | Specifies the IP address of the default gateway. If provided, all packets with destinations not found in the routing table are sent to this gateway. Use the appropriate IP address notation in the IPv4 and IPv6 columns.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| Primary DNS Server   | Specifies the primary IP address of the DNS server. If the requested IP address is not found in the routing table, this DNS server is queried. Use proper IP address notation in the IPv4 and IPv6 columns.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| Secondary DNS Server | Specifies the secondary IP address of the DNS server.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| SSID                 | The unique identifier of the WiFi network.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| Probe Hidden SSID    | An access point (AP) with a hidden SSID (see the Broadcast SSID option in the AP configuration) does not respond to broadcast probe requests, preventing the station from obtaining the necessary information to connect. Enable this option to force the station to probe a specific SSID. If you do not expect a hidden SSID, it is recommended to disable this setting to avoid unnecessary radio transmissions.                                                                                                                                                                             |
| Country Code         | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Optional entry of the country code where the router is installed.</li> <li>• If the country code is not specified, it will use "NL" for ICR-16xx-EU and "CN" for ICR-16xx-CN as the default country code.</li> <li>• If an incorrect country code is entered, the router may violate country-specific regulations regarding WiFi parameters.</li> <li>• This option is not available for NAM routers, where the "US" country code is set by default.</li> <li>• <u>Note</u>: The country code must be entered in ISO 3166-1 alpha-2 format.</li> </ul> |

Continued on the next page

Continued from previous page

| Item            | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|-----------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Authentication  | <p>Access control and authorization of users in the WiFi network.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Open</b> – No authentication required (public access point).</li> <li>• <b>Shared</b> – Authentication based on Pre-Shared Keys (PSK) using the WEP protocol (considered insecure).</li> <li>• <b>WPA-PSK</b> – Authentication based on Pre-Shared Keys (PSK) using the original WPA protocol (considered insecure).</li> <li>• <b>WPA2-PSK</b> – Authentication based on Pre-Shared Keys (PSK) using the WPA2 standard.</li> <li>• <b>WPA3-PSK</b> – Authentication based on Pre-Shared Keys (PSK) using the latest WPA3 standard.</li> <li>• <b>WPA-Enterprise</b> – Authentication using RADIUS with the original WPA protocol (considered insecure).</li> <li>• <b>WPA2-Enterprise</b> – Authentication using RADIUS with the WPA2 standard.</li> </ul> |
| Encryption      | <p>Type of data encryption in the WiFi network:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>None</b> – No encryption (unencrypted network).</li> <li>• <b>WEP</b> – Static encryption using WEP keys. This encryption can be used with Shared authentication but is considered insecure and may not be supported on some models.</li> <li>• <b>TKIP</b> – Legacy dynamic encryption used with WPA and WPA2 authentication.</li> <li>• <b>AES</b> – Modern dynamic encryption used with WPA2 and WPA3 authentication.</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| WEP Key Type    | <p>Specifies the format of the WEP key:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>ASCII</b> – WEP key in ASCII format.</li> <li>• <b>HEX</b> – WEP key in hexadecimal format.</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| WEP Default Key | Defines the default WEP key used for encryption.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| WEP Key 1–4     | <p>Allows entry of up to four different WEP keys:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• WEP key in ASCII format (must be enclosed in quotes). Supported lengths: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– 5 ASCII characters (40-bit WEP key)</li> <li>– 13 ASCII characters (104-bit WEP key)</li> </ul> </li> <li>• WEP key in hexadecimal format. Supported lengths: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– 10 hexadecimal digits (40-bit WEP key)</li> <li>– 26 hexadecimal digits (104-bit WEP key)</li> </ul> </li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| WPA PSK Type    | <p>Specifies the type of key used for WPA-PSK authentication.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>256-bit secret</b> – Requires a 64-digit hexadecimal key.</li> <li>• <b>ASCII passphrase</b> – Accepts a passphrase between 8 and 63 characters.</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |

Continued on the next page

Continued from previous page

| Item                              | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|-----------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| WPA PSK                           | <p>The WPA-PSK authentication key. The key format depends on the selected WPA PSK type:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>256-bit secret</b> – Must be a 64-digit hexadecimal value.</li> <li>• <b>ASCII passphrase</b> – Must contain between 8 and 63 characters.</li> </ul>                                                                     |
| RADIUS EAP Authentication         | <p>Specifies the EAP protocol used for authentication.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>EAP-PEAP/MSCHAPv2</b> – Uses TLS to protect legacy EAP authentication.</li> <li>• <b>EAP-TLS</b> – Utilizes TLS for mutual authentication between the client and server.</li> </ul>                                                                       |
| RADIUS CA Certificate             | The Certificate Authority (CA) certificate used to verify the server certificate when EAP-TLS authentication is selected.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| RADIUS Local Certificate          | The client certificate required for authentication when EAP-TLS is selected.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| RADIUS Local Private Key          | The private key associated with the client certificate for EAP-TLS authentication.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| RADIUS Identity                   | The identity used for connecting to the RADIUS server.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| RADIUS Password                   | The password used to authenticate the RADIUS identity when EAP-PEAP/MSCHAPv2 authentication is selected.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| RADIUS Local Private Key Password | Password used to access the RADIUS Local Private Key when EAP-TLS authentication is selected.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| Syslog Level                      | <p>Defines the logging level for system log messages.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Verbose debugging</b> – The highest level of logging.</li> <li>• <b>Debugging</b></li> <li>• <b>Informational</b> – Default logging level.</li> <li>• <b>Notification</b></li> <li>• <b>Warning</b> – The lowest level of system communication.</li> </ul> |
| Extra options                     | Allows users to define additional parameters for <code>hostapd</code> . The options are appended directly to the configuration file. For more details, refer to the <code>hostapd.conf</code> Linux man page. Use this feature only if you fully understand its implications.                                                                                    |

Table 29: WLAN Configuration Items Description

## 3.7 Backup Routes



- Note that some interfaces, typically WiFi, ETH2, or ETH1, may not be available for some router product lines or for the model you are currently using.
- Note that an ETH interface won't be used as WAN for the default backup route priorities if neither an IP address is configured nor the DHCP client is enabled for this ETH interface.
- Just for the default priorities mode: Unplugging the Ethernet cable does not switch the WAN interface to the next one in order.

Typically, you want the router to direct traffic from the whole LAN (Local Area Network) behind the router to an external WAN (Wide Area Network) outside, such as the Internet.

*Backup Routes* is a mechanism that enables customizing which router's interfaces will be used for communication to the WAN outside the router. The *Backup Routes* configuration page is shown in Figure 31.

You may not care about this configuration and leave this process on the default router mechanism. In this case, leave the *Backup Routes* configuration page as it is, unconfigured, and the router will proceed as described in Chapter 3.7.1.

If you want to set up this feature your way, see Chapter 3.7.2 for more information.

### 3.7.1 Default Priorities for Backup Routes

By default, when the first checkbox, *Enable backup routes switching*, is unchecked, the backup routes system is not user customized and operates with the default mechanism. Instead, the router selects a route to the WAN based on the default priorities.

The following is the list of the network interfaces in descending order from the highest priority to the lowest priority interface for use as a WAN interface.

1. **Mobile WAN** (pppX)
2. **PPPoE** (ppp0)
3. **WiFi STA** (wlan0)
4. **ETH1** (eth1)
5. **ETH0** (eth0)

For example, based on the list above, we can say that the ETH1 interface will only be used as the WAN interface if Mobile WAN, PPPoE, and WiFi STA interfaces are down or disabled.

It is clear from the above that an interface connected to a LAN network can take over the role of a WAN interface under certain circumstances. Possible communication from the LAN to the WAN can be blocked or forwarded rules configured on the *NAT* and *Firewall* configuration pages.



Note that an ETH interface won't be used as WAN for the default backup route priorities if it has no IP address configured or the DHCP client is disabled for this ETH interface. Also, unplugging the Ethernet cable does not switch the route to the next one (true just for the *Default Priorities* mode).

### 3.7.2 User Customized Backup Routes

You can choose preferred router interfaces acting as the WAN, including their priorities, on the *Backup Routes* configuration page; see Figure 31. Switching between the WAN is then carried out according to the order of priority and the state of all the affected interfaces.

There are three different modes you can choose for the connection backup as described in Table 30.

| Item                           | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|--------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Enable backup routes switching | Enables the customized backup routes setting made <b>on the whole configuration page</b> . If disabled (unchecked), the backup routes system operates in the default mechanism, as described in Chapter 3.7.1.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| Mode                           | <p><b>Single WAN</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Just <b>one interface</b> is used for the WAN communication <b>at a time</b>.</li> <li>Other interfaces (if enabled) are used as the backup routes for the WAN communication when the active interface fails (based on the priorities set).</li> <li>Just one interface, currently active, is allowed to access the router from a network outside the router.</li> </ul> <p><b>Multiple WANs</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Just <b>one interface</b> is used for the WAN communication <b>at a time</b>.</li> <li>Other interfaces (if enabled) are used as the backup routes for the WAN communication when the active interface fails (based on the priorities set).</li> <li>The router is accessible from networks outside on all enabled interfaces. This is the <b>only difference</b> from the <i>Single WAN</i> mode.</li> </ul> <p><b>Load Balancing</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>In this mode, it is possible to split the volume of data passing through individual WAN interfaces.</li> <li>If the mode was chosen, the weight for every interface is enabled in the GUI and can be set.</li> <li>This setting determines the relative number of data streams passing through the interfaces.</li> </ul> |

Table 30: Backup Routes Modes

You have now selected a backup route mode. To add a network interface to the backup routes system, mark the enable checkbox of that interface. Enabled interfaces are used for WAN access based on their priorities.



**Note for Load Balancing mode:** The weight setting for load balancing may not precisely match the amount of balanced data. It depends on the number of data flows and the data structure. The best result of the balancing is achieved for a high amount of data flows.



**Note for Mobile WAN:** If you want to use a mobile WAN connection as a backup route, choose the *enable + bind* option in the *Check Connection* item on the *Mobile WAN* page and fill in the ping address; see chapter 3.3.1.



**Note for an ETH interface:** Unlike the default backup route mode, disconnecting the Ethernet cable from an ETH interface switches the route to the next in the sequence.

Settings, which can be made for each interface, are described in the table below. Any changes made to settings will be applied after pressing the *Apply* button.

| Item              | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|-------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Priority          | Priority for the type of connection (network interface).                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| Ping IP Address   | Destination IPv4 address or domain name of ping queries to check the connection.                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| Ping IPv6 Address | Destination IPv6 address or domain name of ping queries to check the connection.                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| Ping Interval     | The time interval between consecutive ping queries.                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| Ping Timeout      | Time in seconds to wait for a response to the ping.                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| Weight            | Weight for the Load Balancing mode only. The number from 1 to 256 determines the ratio for load balancing of the interface. For example, if two interfaces set the weight to 1, the ratio is 50% to 50%. If they set the weight up to 1 and 4, the ratio is 20% to 80%. |

Table 31: Backup Routes Configuration

#### Other notes:

- The system checks the status state of an interface. For example, unlike the *Default Priorities* mode, unplugging the Ethernet cable triggers a switchover to the next WAN interface in the sequence.
- To monitor the interface availability, you can use one or both Ping IP Addresses (IPv4 and IPv6) based on the IP protocol used on a particular network interface and WAN connection settings.

| Backup Routes Configuration                                                                                                                                                                                  |  |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--|
| <input type="checkbox"/> Enable backup routes switching<br>Mode <span>Single WAN</span>                                                                                                                      |  |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Enable backup routes switching for Mobile WAN<br>Priority <span>1st</span><br>Weight                                                                                                |  |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Enable backup routes switching for PPPoE<br>Priority <span>1st</span><br>Ping IP Address<br>Ping IPv6 Address<br>Ping Interval sec<br>Ping Timeout <span>10</span> sec<br>Weight    |  |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Enable backup routes switching for WiFi STA<br>Priority <span>1st</span><br>Ping IP Address<br>Ping IPv6 Address<br>Ping Interval sec<br>Ping Timeout <span>10</span> sec<br>Weight |  |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Enable backup routes switching for ETH0<br>Priority <span>1st</span><br>Ping IP Address<br>Ping IPv6 Address<br>Ping Interval sec<br>Ping Timeout <span>10</span> sec<br>Weight     |  |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Enable backup routes switching for ETH1<br>Priority <span>1st</span><br>Ping IP Address<br>Ping IPv6 Address<br>Ping Interval sec<br>Ping Timeout <span>10</span> sec<br>Weight     |  |
| <input type="button" value="Apply"/>                                                                                                                                                                         |  |

Figure 31: Backup Routes Configuration GUI

### 3.7.3 Backup Routes Examples

#### Example #1: Default Settings

As already described above, by default, if the *Backup Routes* are unconfigured, the system operates with the default priorities as described in Chapter 3.7.1. Figure 32 shows the GUI configuration.

**Note:** Assume all the affected interfaces are correctly configured and activated on their configuration pages.

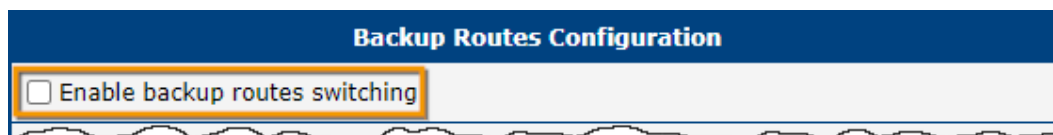


Figure 32: Example #1: GUI Configuration

Figure 33 illustrates the example topology.

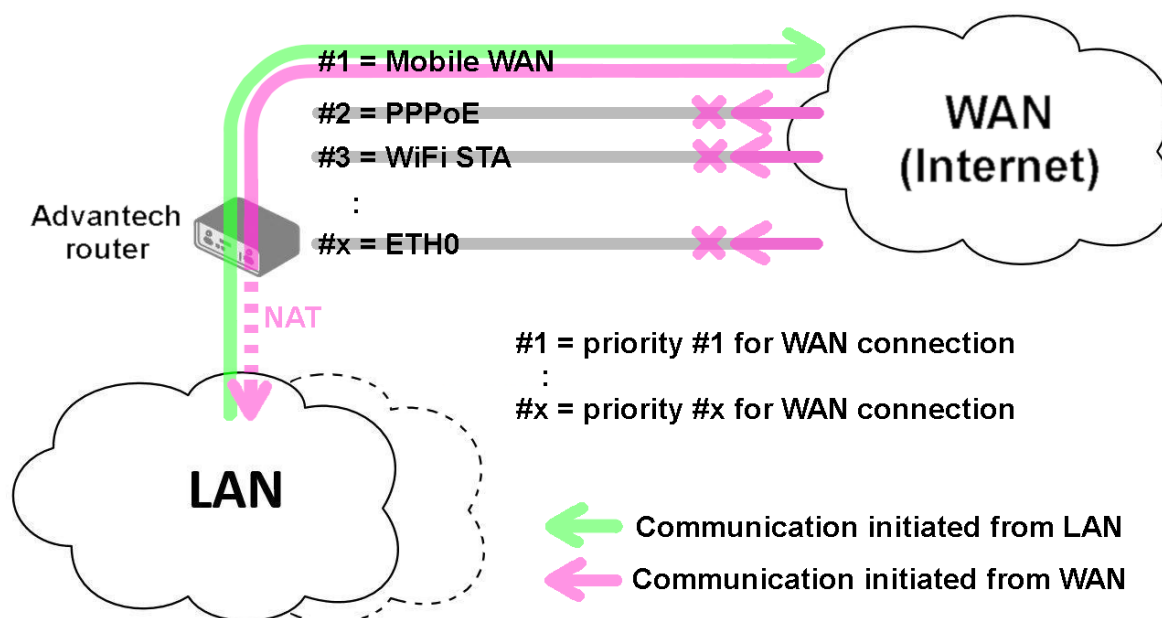


Figure 33: Example #1: Topology

### Example #2: Default Routes Switching

This example illustrates when the interface, primarily used for the WAN connection, is down. Its role is taken over by the interface with the second highest priority. Since the *Backup Routes* configuration is still unconfigured, the system operates with the default system priorities described in Chapter 3.7.1. Figure 34 shows the GUI configuration.

**Note:** Assume all the affected interfaces are correctly configured and activated on their configuration pages.

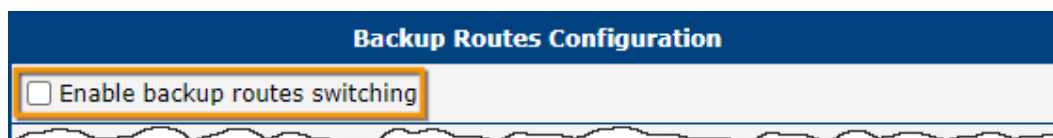


Figure 34: Example #2: GUI Configuration

Figure 35 illustrates the example topology.

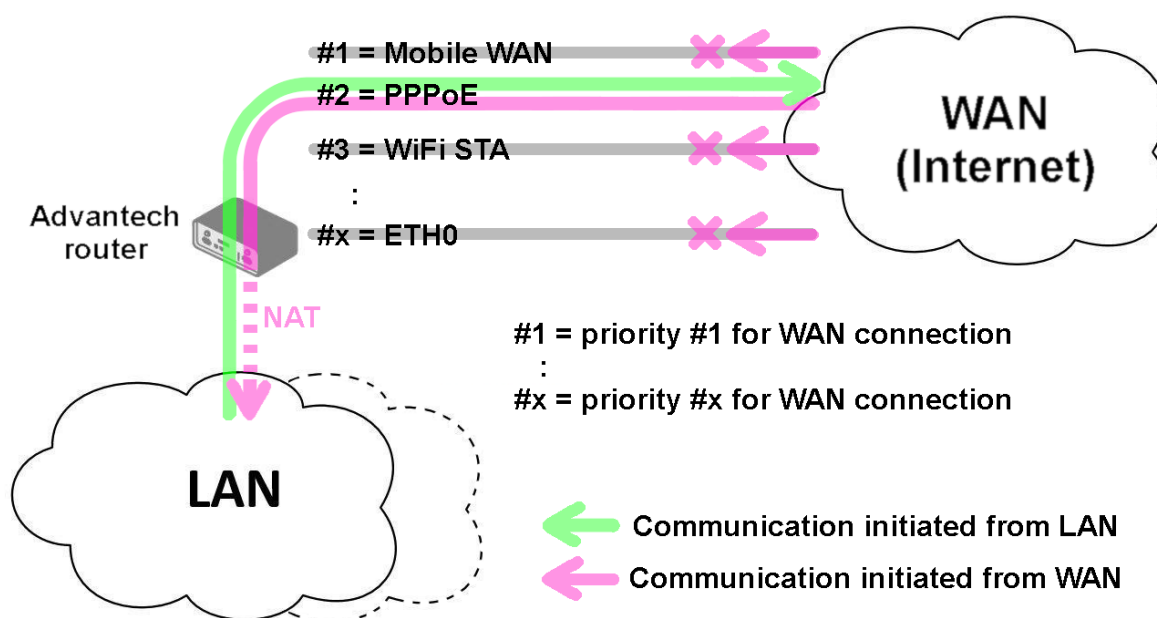


Figure 35: Example #2: Topology

### Example #3: Custom Backup Routes

This example illustrates the configuration of custom backup routes for the Mobile WAN, PPPoE, and ETH1 interfaces. The Mobile WAN interface has the highest priority, and the ETH1 interface has the lowest priority. Figure 36 shows the GUI configuration.

**Note:** Assume all the affected interfaces are correctly configured and activated on their configuration pages.

| Backup Routes Configuration                                                       |            |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------|
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable backup routes switching                |            |
| Mode                                                                              | Single WAN |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable backup routes switching for Mobile WAN |            |
| Priority                                                                          | 1st        |
| Weight                                                                            |            |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable backup routes switching for PPPoE      |            |
| Priority                                                                          | 2nd        |
| Ping IP Address                                                                   | 172.16.1.1 |
| Ping IPv6 Address                                                                 |            |
| Ping Interval                                                                     | 30 sec     |
| Ping Timeout                                                                      | 10 sec     |
| Weight                                                                            |            |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Enable backup routes switching for WiFi STA              |            |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Enable backup routes switching for ETH0                  |            |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable backup routes switching for ETH1       |            |
| Priority                                                                          | 3rd        |
| Ping IP Address                                                                   |            |
| Ping IPv6 Address                                                                 |            |
| Ping Interval                                                                     | sec        |
| Ping Timeout                                                                      | 10 sec     |
| Weight                                                                            |            |
| <input type="button" value="Apply"/>                                              |            |

Figure 36: Example #3: GUI Configuration

Figure 37 illustrates the example topology for *Single WAN* mode. If the Mobile WAN connection goes down, the PPPoE tunnel takes its role, and so on. The ping to the 172.16.1.1 address, tested every 30 seconds with a timeout of 10 seconds, checks the status of the PPPoE tunnel.

Figure 38 illustrates the example topology for *Multiple WAN* mode. As you can see, the only difference between these two modes is that in the *Multiple WAN* mode, the router is accessible on all interfaces from the WAN simultaneously.

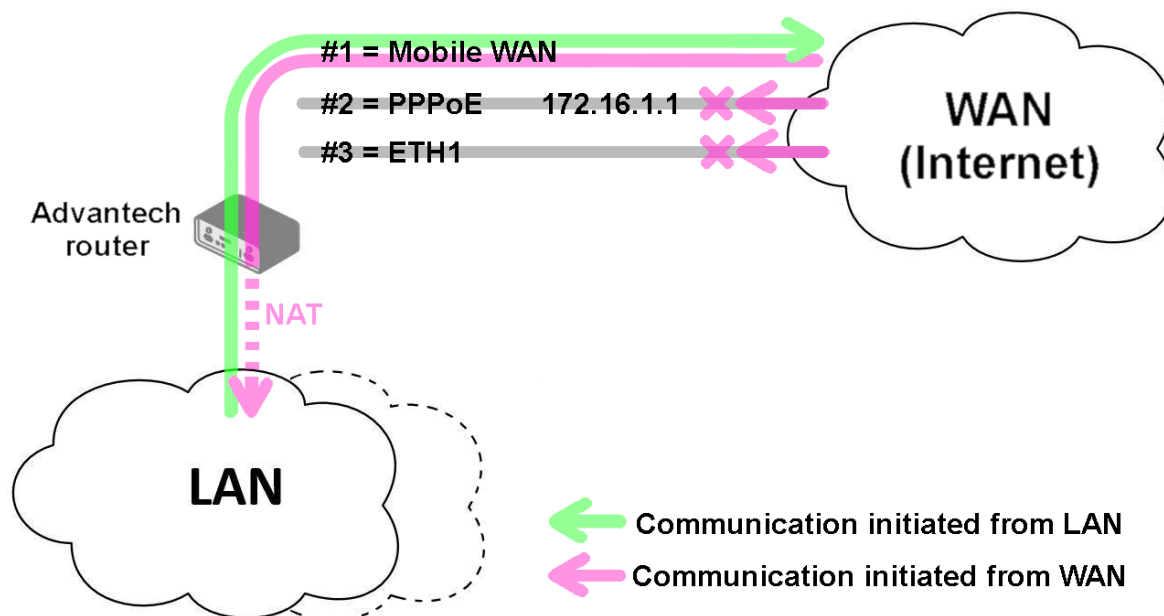


Figure 37: Example #3: Topology for *Single WAN* mode

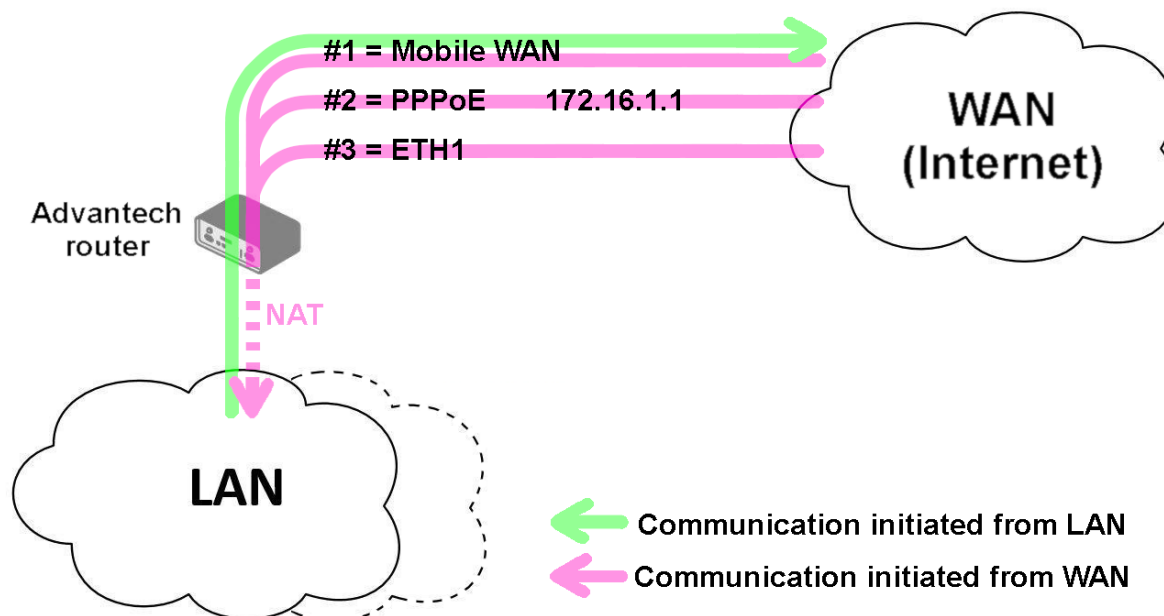


Figure 38: Example #3: Topology for *Multiple WAN* mode

Example #4: Load Balancing Mode

This example illustrates the *Load Balancing* mode configuration. There are just two interfaces configured, the Mobile WAN and PPPoE. The weight is set to 4 and 1, so the traffic data volume is approximately 80 and 20 percent. Figure 39 shows the GUI configuration.

Backup Routes Configuration

☒ Enable backup routes switching

Mode

Load Balancing

☒ Enable backup routes switching for Mobile WAN

Priority

1st

Weight

4

☒ Enable backup routes switching for PPPoE

Priority

2nd

Ping IP Address

Ping IPv6 Address

Ping Intervalsec

Ping Timeout

10

sec

Weight

1

Figure 39: Example #4: GUI Configuration

Figure 40 illustrates the example topology.

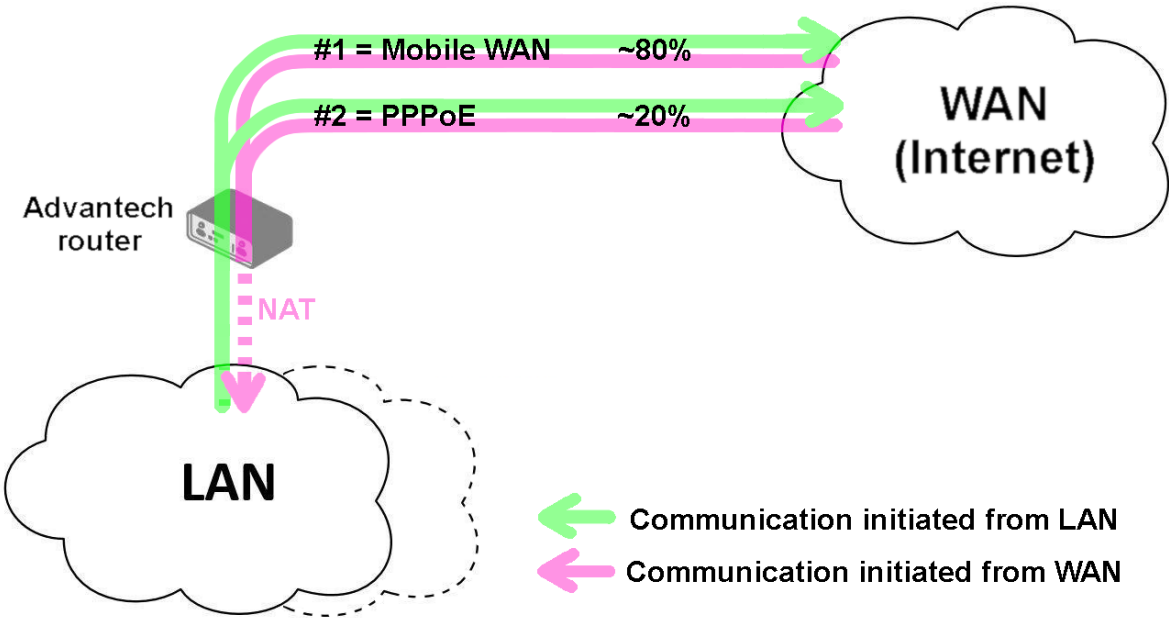
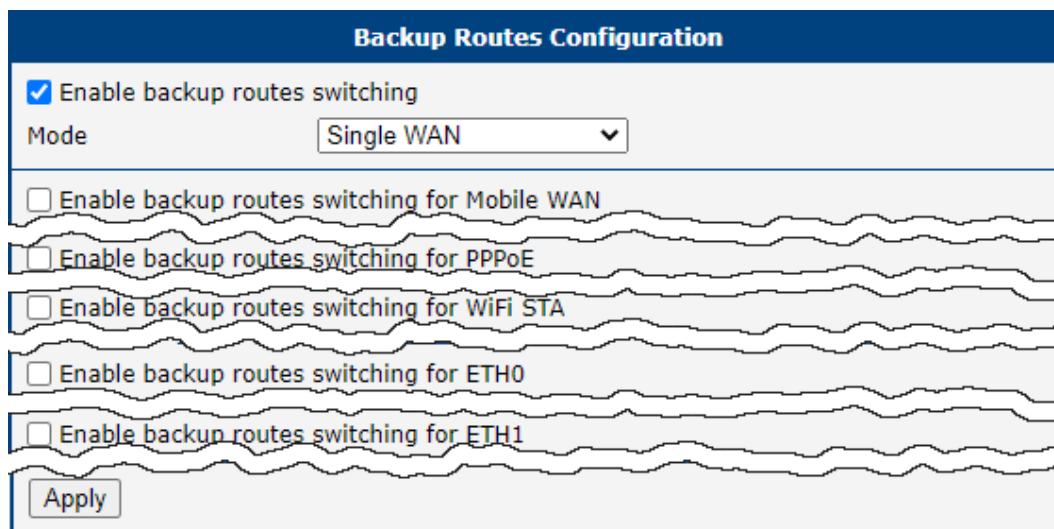


Figure 40: Example #4: Topology

**Example #5: No WAN Routes**

This example illustrates when *Router Backup* is enabled but no specific interface is selected for the WAN route. In this case, the router has no dedicated WAN interface and routes the traffic within the LANs. Figure 41 shows the GUI configuration.

**Note:** The Mobile WAN interface is not accessible, even if configured and connected to a cellular network.



**Backup Routes Configuration**

☒ Enable backup routes switching

Mode: Single WAN

☐ Enable backup routes switching for Mobile WAN

☐ Enable backup routes switching for PPPoE

☐ Enable backup routes switching for WiFi STA

☐ Enable backup routes switching for ETH0

☐ Enable backup routes switching for ETH1

Figure 41: Example #5: GUI Configuration

Figure 42 illustrates the example topology.

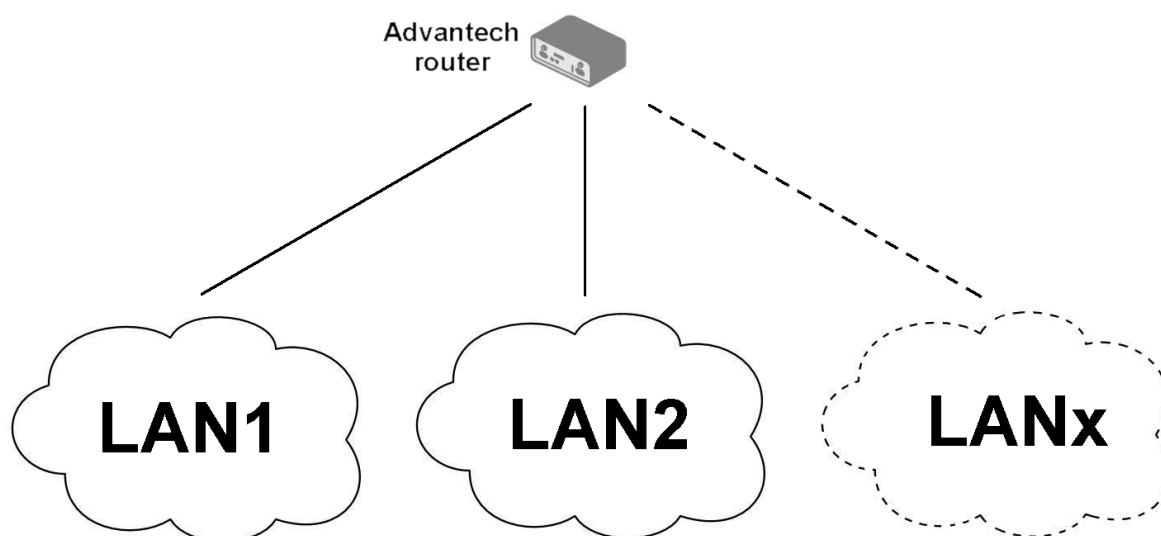


Figure 42: Example #5: Topology

## 3.8 Static Routes

Static routes can be specified on the *Static Routes* configuration page. A static route provide fixed routing path through the network. It is manually configured on the router and must be updated if the network topology was changed recently. Static routes are private routers unless they are redistributed by a routing protocol. There are two forms, one for IPv4 and the second for IPv6 configuration. Static routes configuration form for IPv4 is shown on Figure 43.

| IPv4 Static Routes Configuration                   |                       |                      |                      |           |
|----------------------------------------------------|-----------------------|----------------------|----------------------|-----------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> Enable IPv4 static routes |                       |                      |                      |           |
| Destination Network                                | Mask or Prefix Length | Gateway *            | Metric *             | Interface |
| <input type="text"/>                               | <input type="text"/>  | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text"/> | ETH0 ▼    |
| <input type="text"/>                               | <input type="text"/>  | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text"/> | ETH0 ▼    |
| <input type="text"/>                               | <input type="text"/>  | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text"/> | ETH0 ▼    |
| <input type="text"/>                               | <input type="text"/>  | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text"/> | ETH0 ▼    |
| <input type="text"/>                               | <input type="text"/>  | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text"/> | ETH0 ▼    |
| <input type="text"/>                               | <input type="text"/>  | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text"/> | ETH0 ▼    |
| <input type="text"/>                               | <input type="text"/>  | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text"/> | ETH0 ▼    |
| <input type="text"/>                               | <input type="text"/>  | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text"/> | ETH0 ▼    |
| * can be blank                                     |                       |                      |                      |           |
| <input type="button" value="Apply"/>               |                       |                      |                      |           |

Figure 43: Static Routes Configuration

The description of all items is listed in Table 32.

| Item                      | Description                                                                                                                                |
|---------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Enable IPv4 static routes | If checked, static routing functionality is enabled. Active are only routes enabled by the checkbox in the first column of the table.      |
| Destination Network       | The destination IP address of the remote network or host to which you want to assign a static route.                                       |
| Mask or Prefix Length     | The subnet mask of the remote network or host IP address.                                                                                  |
| Gateway                   | IP address of the gateway device that allows for contact between the router and the remote network or host.                                |
| Metric                    | Metric definition, means number rating of the priority for the route in the routing table. Routes with lower metrics have higher priority. |
| Interface                 | Select an interface the remote network or host is on.                                                                                      |

Table 32: Static Routes Configuration for IPv4

3.9 Firewall

The firewall is responsible for filtering network traffic. The router implements independent IPv4 and IPv6 firewalls, as it supports a dual-stack configuration for both protocols.

Clicking the *Firewall* item in the *Configuration* menu on the left expands it into three submenus: *IPv4*, *IPv6*, and *Sites*.

Figure 44 displays the default configuration page for the IPv6 firewall. The configuration fields are identical in both the *IPv4 Firewall Configuration* and *IPv6 Firewall Configuration* forms.

IPv6 Firewall Configuration

☐ Enable filtering of incoming packets

|   | Source *                 | Protocol             | Target Port(s) * | Action               | Description * |                      |
|---|--------------------------|----------------------|------------------|----------------------|---------------|----------------------|
| 1 | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="text"/> | all              | <input type="text"/> | allow         | <input type="text"/> |
| 2 | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="text"/> | all              | <input type="text"/> | allow         | <input type="text"/> |

Maximum 32 items

☐ Enable filtering of forwarded packets

|   | Source *                 | Destination *        | Protocol     | Target Port(s) *     | Action               | Description *        |                        |
|---|--------------------------|----------------------|--------------|----------------------|----------------------|----------------------|------------------------|
| 1 | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="text"/> | 64:ff9b::/96 | all                  | <input type="text"/> | allow                | Default rule for NAT64 |
| 2 | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="text"/> | all          | <input type="text"/> | allow                | <input type="text"/> |                        |
| 3 | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="text"/> | all          | <input type="text"/> | allow                | <input type="text"/> |                        |

Maximum 32 items

☐ Enable filtering of locally destined packets

☐ Enable protection against DoS attacks

\* can be blank

Apply

Figure 44: IPv6 Default Firewall Configuration

The first section of the configuration form defines the **incoming firewall policy**. If the *Enable filtering of incoming packets* checkbox is unchecked, all incoming connections are accepted. When enabled, and if connections originate from the WAN interface, the router checks them against the PREROUTING chain in the mangle table. The router accepts a connection only if a matching rule exists with the *Action* set to *accept* (the first matching rule is applied). If no matching rule is found or if the *Action* is set to *deny*, the connection is dropped.

You can define rules based on IP addresses, protocols, and ports to allow or deny access to the router and the internal network behind it. The system allows up to thirty-two rules, each of which can be enabled or disabled using the checkbox on the left of the rule row. A new row for defining the next rule appears automatically after filling in the previous one. See Table 33 for a description of the incoming rule definitions.

Please note that incoming rules apply only to connections originating **from the WAN side** (or WAN interface). For details on priority rules related to WAN interfaces, refer to Chapter 3.7.1.

| Item                | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|---------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Source <sup>1</sup> | Specifies the IP address to which the rule applies. Use an IPv4 address in <i>IPv4 Firewall Configuration</i> and an IPv6 address in <i>IPv6 Firewall Configuration</i> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| Protocol            | Specifies the protocol to which the rule applies: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>all</b> – The rule applies to all protocols, including those not listed below.</li> <li>• <b>TCP</b> – The rule applies to the TCP protocol.</li> <li>• <b>UDP</b> – The rule applies to the UDP protocol.</li> <li>• <b>GRE</b> – The rule applies to the GRE protocol.</li> <li>• <b>ESP</b> – The rule applies to the ESP protocol.</li> <li>• <b>ICMP/ICMPv6</b> – The rule applies to the ICMP protocol. In the <i>IPv6 Firewall Configuration</i>, there is an option for ICMPv6.</li> </ul> |
| Target Port(s)      | Specifies the port numbers or range that allow access to the router. Enter the initial and final port numbers separated by a hyphen. A single static port can also be specified.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| Action              | Specifies the action the router performs based on the rule: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>allow</b> – The router permits the packets to enter the network.</li> <li>• <b>deny</b> – The router blocks the packets from entering the network.</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| Description         | A user-defined description of the rule.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |

Table 33: Filtering of Incoming Packets

The next section of the configuration form defines the **forwarding firewall policy**. If the *Enable filtering of forwarded packets* checkbox is unchecked, all incoming packets are accepted. When enabled, and if a packet is addressed to another network interface, the router processes it through the FORWARD chain in the iptables firewall. If the FORWARD chain accepts the packet, the router forwards it, provided there is a corresponding entry in the routing table.

You can define up to thirty-two rules, each of which can be enabled or disabled using the checkbox on the left side of the rule row. A new row for defining the next rule appears automatically after filling in the previous one. The forwarding settings apply to all interfaces, regardless of whether the interface is designated as WAN.

The configuration form includes a table for specifying filter rules. You can create a rule to allow data for a selected protocol by specifying only the protocol, or you can define stricter rules by specifying values for source IP addresses, destination IP addresses, and ports. See Table 34 for a description of the forwarding rule definitions.



As shown in the Figure 44, the first entry in the IPv6 forwarded packets configuration is the default firewall rule for NAT64, which is disabled by default. To enable the NAT64 interface, navigate to *Configuration* → *NAT* → *IPv6* → *Enable NAT64*.

<sup>1</sup>This field supports IP address input in the formats: `IP` , `IP/mask` , or `IP_start-IP_end` .

| Item                     | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|--------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Source <sup>1</sup>      | Specifies the source IP address to which the rule applies. Use an IPv4 address in the <i>IPv4 Firewall Configuration</i> and an IPv6 address in the <i>IPv6 Firewall Configuration</i> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| Destination <sup>1</sup> | Specifies the destination IP address to which the rule applies. Use an IPv4 address in the <i>IPv4 Firewall Configuration</i> and an IPv6 address in the <i>IPv6 Firewall Configuration</i> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| Protocol                 | Specifies the protocol to which the rule applies: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>all</b> – The rule applies to all protocols, including those not listed below.</li> <li>• <b>TCP</b> – The rule applies to the TCP protocol.</li> <li>• <b>UDP</b> – The rule applies to the UDP protocol.</li> <li>• <b>GRE</b> – The rule applies to the GRE protocol.</li> <li>• <b>ESP</b> – The rule applies to the ESP protocol.</li> <li>• <b>ICMP/ICMPv6</b> – The rule applies to the ICMP protocol. In the <i>IPv6 Firewall Configuration</i>, there is an option for ICMPv6.</li> </ul> |
| Target Port(s)           | Specifies the target port numbers. Enter the initial and final port numbers separated by a hyphen. A single static port can also be specified.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| Action                   | Defines the action the router performs based on the rule: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>allow</b> – The router permits the packets to be forwarded.</li> <li>• <b>deny</b> – The router blocks the packets from being forwarded.</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| Description              | A user-defined description of the rule.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |

Table 34: Forward Filtering

When the *Enable filtering of locally destined packets* function is enabled, the router automatically drops packets requesting an unsupported service without sending any notification.

To protect against DoS attacks, the *Enable protection against DoS attacks* option limits the number of allowed connections per second to five. A DoS attack floods the target system with excessive requests, overwhelming its resources.

<sup>1</sup>This field supports IP address input in the formats: `IP` , `IP/mask` , or `IP_start-IP_end` .

3.9.1 Example of the IPv4 Firewall Configuration

The router permits the following access:

- Access from IP address 198.51.100.45 using any protocol.
- Access from the IP address range 192.0.2.123 to 192.0.3.127 using the TCP protocol on port 1000.
- Access from IP address 203.0.113.67 using the ICMP protocol.
- Access from IP address 203.0.113.67 using the TCP protocol on target ports ranging from 1020 to 1040.

See the network topology and configuration form in the figures below.

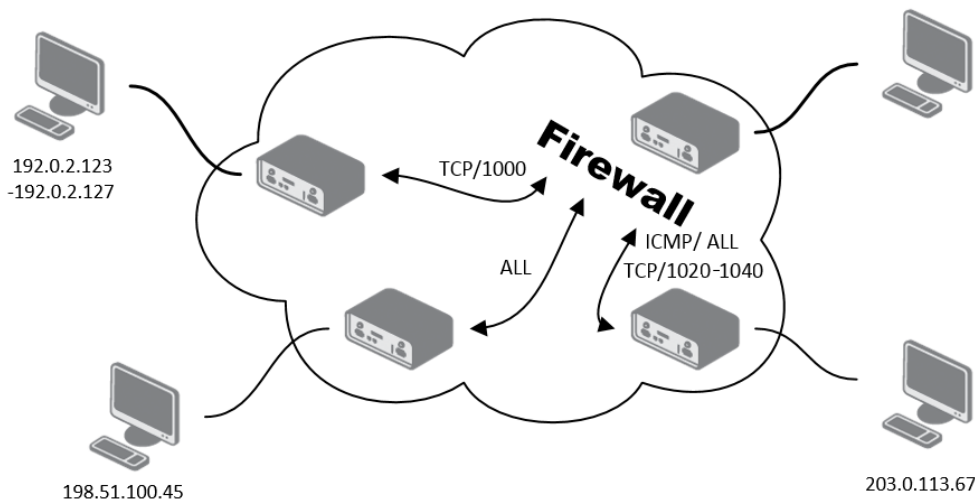


Figure 45: Topology for the IPv4 Firewall Configuration Example

IPv4 Firewall Configuration

☒ Enable filtering of incoming packets

|   | Source *                                                    | Protocol | Target Port(s) * | Action | Description * |
|---|-------------------------------------------------------------|----------|------------------|--------|---------------|
| 1 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 198.51.100.45           | all      |                  | allow  |               |
| 2 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 192.0.2.123-192.0.2.127 | TCP      | 1000             | allow  |               |
| 3 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 203.0.113.67            | ICMP     |                  | allow  |               |
| 4 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 203.0.113.67            | TCP      | 1020-1040        | allow  |               |
| 5 | <input type="checkbox"/>                                    | all      |                  | allow  |               |
| 6 | <input type="checkbox"/>                                    | all      |                  | allow  |               |

Maximum 32 items

☐ Enable filtering of forwarded packets

|   | Source *                 | Destination * | Protocol | Target Port(s) * | Action | Description * |
|---|--------------------------|---------------|----------|------------------|--------|---------------|
| 1 | <input type="checkbox"/> |               | all      |                  | allow  |               |
| 2 | <input type="checkbox"/> |               | all      |                  | allow  |               |

Maximum 32 items

☐ Enable filtering of locally destined packets

☐ Enable protection against DoS attacks

\* can be blank

Apply

Figure 46: IPv4 Firewall Configuration Example

## 3.10 NAT

To configure the address translation function, click on *NAT* in the *Configuration* section of the main menu. There is independent IPv4 and IPv6 NAT configuration since there is dual stack IPv4 and IPv6 implemented in the router. The *NAT* item in the menu on the left will expand to *IPv4* and *IPv6* options and you can click *IPv6* to enable and configure the IPv6 NAT – see Figure below. The configuration fields have the same meaning in the *IPv4 NAT Configuration* and *IPv6 NAT Configuration* forms.

The router actually uses Port Address Translation (PAT), which is a method of mapping a TCP/UDP port to another TCP/UDP port. The router modifies the information in the packet header as the packets traverse a router. This configuration form allows you to specify up to 16 PAT rules.

| Item                | Description                                                                                                                                        |
|---------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Public Port(s)      | The public port numbers range for NAT. Enter the initial and final port numbers separated by the hyphen mark. One static port is allowed as well.  |
| Private Port(s)     | The private port numbers range for NAT. Enter the initial and final port numbers separated by the hyphen mark. One static port is allowed as well. |
| Type                | Protocol type – TCP or UDP.                                                                                                                        |
| Server IP address   | In <i>IPv4 NAT Configuration</i> only. IPv4 address where the router forwards incoming data.                                                       |
| Server IPv6 address | In <i>IPv6 NAT Configuration</i> only. IPv6 address where the router forwards incoming data.                                                       |
| Description         | Description of the rule.                                                                                                                           |

Table 35: NAT Configuration

If you require more than sixteen NAT rules, insert the remaining rules into the Startup Script. The *Startup Script* dialog is located on *Scripts* page in the *Configuration* section of the menu. When creating your rules in the Startup Script, use this command for IPv4 NAT:



```
iptables -t nat -A pre_nat -p tcp --dport [PORT_PUBLIC] -j DNAT
--to-destination [IPADDR]:[PORT_PRIVATE]
```

Enter the IP address [IPADDR], the public ports numbers [PORT\_PUBLIC], and private [PORT\_PRIVATE] in place of square brackets.

For IPv6 NAT use `ip6tables` command with same options.:



```
ip6tables -t nat -A napt -p tcp --dport [PORT_PUBLIC] -j DNAT
--to-destination [IP6ADDR]:[PORT_PRIVATE]
```

If you enable the following options and enter the port number, the router allows you to remotely access to the router from WAN (Mobile WAN) interface.

| NAT Configuration |                 |       |                   |               |
|-------------------|-----------------|-------|-------------------|---------------|
| Public Port(s)    | Private Port(s) | Type  | Server IP Address | Description * |
| 81                | 80              | TCP ▾ | 192.168.1.2       |               |
| 82                | 80              | TCP ▾ | 192.168.1.3       |               |
| 83                | 80              | TCP ▾ | 192.168.1.4       |               |
|                   |                 | TCP ▾ |                   |               |
|                   |                 | TCP ▾ |                   |               |
|                   |                 | TCP ▾ |                   |               |
|                   |                 | TCP ▾ |                   |               |
|                   |                 | TCP ▾ |                   |               |
|                   |                 | TCP ▾ |                   |               |
|                   |                 | TCP ▾ |                   |               |
|                   |                 | TCP ▾ |                   |               |
|                   |                 | TCP ▾ |                   |               |
|                   |                 | TCP ▾ |                   |               |
|                   |                 | TCP ▾ |                   |               |
|                   |                 | TCP ▾ |                   |               |
|                   |                 | TCP ▾ |                   |               |
|                   |                 | TCP ▾ |                   |               |
|                   |                 | TCP ▾ |                   |               |
|                   |                 | TCP ▾ |                   |               |
|                   |                 | TCP ▾ |                   |               |
|                   |                 | TCP ▾ |                   |               |

☐ Enable remote HTTP access on port   
☐ Enable remote HTTPS access on port   
☐ Enable remote FTP access on port   
☐ Enable remote SSH access on port   
☐ Enable remote Telnet access on port   
☐ Enable remote SNMP access on port

---

☐ Send all remaining incoming packets to default server  
 Default Server IP Address

---

☐ Masquerade outgoing packets  
☐ Enable SIP ALG  
☐ Enable FTP Helper on public port(s)   
☐ Enable PPTP Helper on public port(s)

---

\* can be blank

Figure 47: NAT – IPv6 NAT Configuration

| Item                                 | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Enable remote HTTP access on port    | This option <b>sets the redirect from HTTP to HTTPS only</b> (disabled in default configuration).                                                                                                           |
| Enable remote HTTPS access on port   | If field and port number are filled in, configuration of the router over web interface is allowed (disabled in default configuration).                                                                      |
| Enable remote FTP access on port     | Select this option to allow access to the router using FTP (disabled in default configuration).                                                                                                             |
| Enable remote SSH access on port     | Select this option to allow access to the router using SSH (disabled in default configuration).                                                                                                             |
| Enable remote Telnet access on port  | Select this option to allow access to the router using Telnet (disabled in default configuration).                                                                                                          |
| Enable remote SNMP access on port    | Select this option to allow access to the router using SNMP (disabled in default configuration).                                                                                                            |
| Masquerade outgoing packets          | Activates/deactivates the network address translation function.                                                                                                                                             |
| Enable SIP ALG                       | (NAT IPv4 only) Enables the SIP Application Layer Gateway (ALG). When enabled, the router modifies SIP packets to facilitate proper NAT traversal, which is essential for VoIP traffic.                     |
| Enable FTP Helper on public port(s)  | Assists in handling FTP traffic on the specified public port (default: 21). The FTP Helper improves FTP traffic traversal through NAT, particularly for active FTP sessions.                                |
| Enable PPTP Helper on public port(s) | (NAT IPv4 only) Enables the PPTP (Point-to-Point Tunneling Protocol) Helper for VPN traffic on the specified public port (default: 1723). The PPTP Helper ensures proper NAT handling for PPTP connections. |

Table 36: Remote Access Configuration

 *Enable remote HTTP access on port* activates **the redirect from HTTP to HTTPS protocol only**. The router doesn't allow unsecured HTTP protocol to access the web configuration. To access the web configuration, always check the *Enable remote HTTPS access on port* item. Never enable the HTTP item only to access the web configuration from the Internet (configuration would not be accessible from the Internet). Always check the HTTPS item or HTTPS and HTTP items together (to set the redirect from HTTP).

Use the following parameters to set the routing of incoming data from the WAN (Mobile WAN) to a connected computer.

| Item                                                  | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|-------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Send all remaining incoming packets to default server | Enables forwarding of unmatched incoming packets to the default server specified in the <i>Default Server IPv4/IPv6 Address</i> field. This setting forwards data from the mobile WAN to the assigned IP address. |
| Default Server IPv4/IPv6 Address                      | Specifies the IPv4/IPv6 address of the default server.                                                                                                                                                            |

Table 37: Configuration of Send all incoming packets to server

### 3.10.1 Examples of NAT Configuration

#### Example 1: IPv4 NAT Configuration with Single Device Connected

It is important to mark the *Send all remaining incoming packets to default server* check box for this configuration. The IP address in this example is the address of the device behind the router. The default gateway of the devices in the subnetwork connected to router is the same IP address as displayed in the *Default Server IPv4 Address* field. The connected device replies if a PING is sent to the IP address of the SIM card.

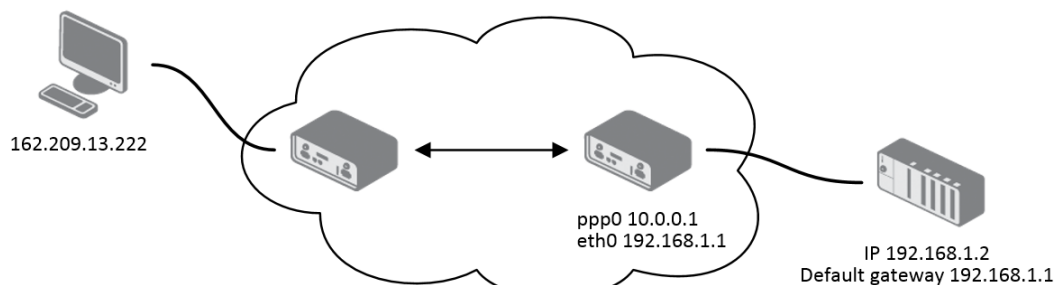


Figure 48: Topology for NAT Configuration Example 1

| IPv4 NAT Configuration |                 |       |                   |               |
|------------------------|-----------------|-------|-------------------|---------------|
| Public Port(s)         | Private Port(s) | Type  | Server IP Address | Description * |
|                        |                 | TCP ▾ |                   |               |
|                        |                 | TCP ▾ |                   |               |
|                        |                 | TCP ▾ |                   |               |
|                        |                 | TCP ▾ |                   |               |
|                        |                 | TCP ▾ |                   |               |
|                        |                 | TCP ▾ |                   |               |
|                        |                 | TCP ▾ |                   |               |
|                        |                 | TCP ▾ |                   |               |
|                        |                 | TCP ▾ |                   |               |
|                        |                 | TCP ▾ |                   |               |
|                        |                 | TCP ▾ |                   |               |
|                        |                 | TCP ▾ |                   |               |
|                        |                 | TCP ▾ |                   |               |
|                        |                 | TCP ▾ |                   |               |
|                        |                 | TCP ▾ |                   |               |
|                        |                 | TCP ▾ |                   |               |
|                        |                 | TCP ▾ |                   |               |
|                        |                 | TCP ▾ |                   |               |
|                        |                 | TCP ▾ |                   |               |
|                        |                 | TCP ▾ |                   |               |
|                        |                 | TCP ▾ |                   |               |

☐ Enable remote HTTP access on port

☐ Enable remote HTTPS access on port

☐ Enable remote FTP access on port

☐ Enable remote SSH access on port

☐ Enable remote Telnet access on port

☒ Enable remote SNMP access on port

☒ Send all remaining incoming packets to default server

Default Server IP Address

☒ Masquerade outgoing packets

\* can be blank

Figure 49: NAT Configuration for Example 1

**Example 2: IPv4 NAT Configuration with More Equipment Connected**

In this example, using the switch you can connect more devices behind the router. Every device connected behind the router has its own IP address. Enter the address in the *Server IPv Address* field in the *NAT* dialog. The devices are communicating on port 80, but you can set port forwarding using the *Public Port* and *Private Port* fields in the NAT dialog. You have now configured the router to access the 192.168.1.2:80 socket behind the router when accessing the IP address 10.0.0.1:81 from the Internet. If you send a ping request to the public IP address of the router (10.0.0.1), the router responds as usual (not forwarding). And since the *Send all remaining incoming packets to default server* is inactive, the router denies connection attempts.

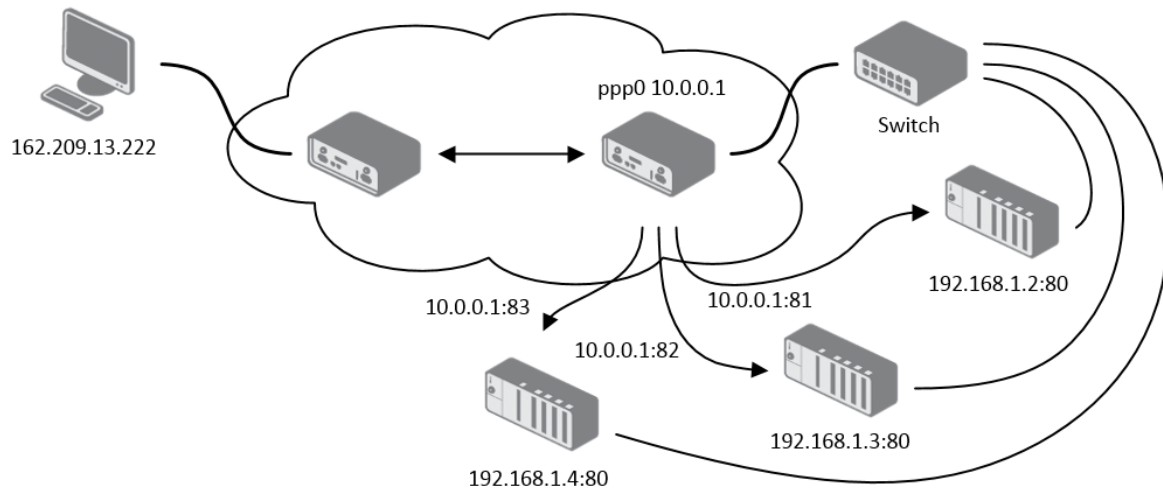


Figure 50: Topology for NAT Configuration Example 2

| IPv4 NAT Configuration |                 |       |                   |               |
|------------------------|-----------------|-------|-------------------|---------------|
| Public Port(s)         | Private Port(s) | Type  | Server IP Address | Description * |
| 81                     | 80              | TCP ▾ | 192.168.1.2       |               |
| 82                     | 80              | TCP ▾ | 192.168.1.3       |               |
| 83                     | 80              | TCP ▾ | 192.168.1.4       |               |
|                        |                 | TCP ▾ |                   |               |
|                        |                 | TCP ▾ |                   |               |
|                        |                 | TCP ▾ |                   |               |
|                        |                 | TCP ▾ |                   |               |
|                        |                 | TCP ▾ |                   |               |
|                        |                 | TCP ▾ |                   |               |
|                        |                 | TCP ▾ |                   |               |
|                        |                 | TCP ▾ |                   |               |
|                        |                 | TCP ▾ |                   |               |
|                        |                 | TCP ▾ |                   |               |
|                        |                 | TCP ▾ |                   |               |
|                        |                 | TCP ▾ |                   |               |
|                        |                 | TCP ▾ |                   |               |
|                        |                 | TCP ▾ |                   |               |

☐ Enable remote HTTP access on port

☐ Enable remote HTTPS access on port

☐ Enable remote FTP access on port

☐ Enable remote SSH access on port

☐ Enable remote Telnet access on port

☒ Enable remote SNMP access on port

☐ Send all remaining incoming packets to default server

Default Server IP Address

☒ Masquerade outgoing packets

\* can be blank

Apply

Figure 51: NAT Configuration for Example 2

### 3.11 OpenVPN

Select the *OpenVPN* item to configure an OpenVPN tunnel. The menu item will expand and you will see two separate configuration pages: *1st Tunnel* and *2nd Tunnel*. The OpenVPN tunnel function allows you to create a secure connection between two separate LAN networks. IPv4 and IPv6 dual stack is supported.

| Item                        | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Description                 | Specifies the description or name of tunnel.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| Interface Type              | <p>TAP is basically at the Ethernet level (layer 2) and acts as a switch, whereas TUN works at the network level (layer 3) and routes packets on the VPN. TAP is bridging, whereas TUN is routing.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>TUN</b> – Choose the TUN mode.</li> <li>• <b>TAP</b> – Choose the TAP mode, but remember first to <b>configure the bridge</b> on the ethernet interface.</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                    |
| Protocol                    | <p>Specifies the communication protocol.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>UDP</b> – The OpenVPN communicates using UDP.</li> <li>• <b>TCP server</b> – The OpenVPN communicates using TCP in server mode.</li> <li>• <b>TCP client</b> – The OpenVPN communicates using TCP in client mode.</li> <li>• <b>UDPv6</b> – The OpenVPN communicates using UDP over IPv6.</li> <li>• <b>TCPv6 server</b> – The OpenVPN communicates using TCP over IPv6 in server mode.</li> <li>• <b>TCPv6 client</b> – The OpenVPN communicates using TCP over IPv6 in client mode.</li> </ul> |
| UDP/TCP port                | Specifies the port of the relevant protocol (UDP or TCP).                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| 1st Remote IP Address       | Specifies the first IPv4, IPv6 address or domain name of the opposite side of the tunnel.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| 2nd Remote IP Address       | Specifies the second IPv4, IPv6 address or domain name of the opposite side of the tunnel.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| Remote Subnet               | IPv4 address of a network behind opposite side of the tunnel.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| Remote Subnet Mask          | IPv4 subnet mask of a network behind opposite tunnel's side.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| Redirect Gateway            | Adds (rewrites) the default gateway. All the packets are then sent to this gateway via tunnel, if there is no other specified default gateway inside them.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| Local Interface IP Address  | Specifies the IPv4 address of a local interface. <b>For proper routing it is recommended to fill-in any IPv4 address from local range even if you are using IPv6 tunnel only.</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| Remote Interface IP Address | Specifies the IPv4 address of the interface of opposite side of the tunnel. <b>For proper routing it is recommended to fill-in any IPv4 address from local range even if you are using IPv6 tunnel only.</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |

Continued on next page

Continued from previous page

| Item                          | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|-------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Remote IPv6 Subnet            | IPv6 address of the remote IPv6 network. Equivalent of the <i>Remote Subnet</i> in IPv4 section.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| Remote IPv6 Prefix            | IPv6 prefix of the remote IPv6 network. Equivalent of the <i>Remote Subnet Mask</i> in IPv4 section.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| Local Interface IPv6 Address  | Specifies the IPv6 address of a local interface.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| Remote Interface IPv6 Address | Specifies the IPv6 address of the interface of opposite side of the tunnel.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| Ping Interval                 | Time interval after which the router sends a message to opposite side of tunnel to verify the existence of the tunnel.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| Ping Timeout                  | Specifies the time interval the router waits for a message sent by the opposite side. For proper verification of the OpenVPN tunnel, set the <i>Ping Timeout</i> to greater than the <i>Ping Interval</i> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| Renegotiate Interval          | Specifies the renegotiate period (reauthorization) of the OpenVPN tunnel. You can only set this parameter when the <i>Authenticate Mode</i> is set to <i>username/password</i> or <i>X.509 certificate</i> . After this time period, the router changes the tunnel encryption to keep the tunnel secure.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| Max Fragment Size             | Maximum size of a sent packet.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| Compression                   | Compression of the data sent: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>none</b> – No compression is used.</li> <li>• <b>LZO</b> – A lossless compression is used, use the same setting on both sides of the tunnel.</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| NAT Rules                     | Activates/deactivates the NAT rules for the OpenVPN tunnel: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>not applied</b> – NAT rules are not applied to the tunnel.</li> <li>• <b>applied</b> – NAT rules are applied to the OpenVPN tunnel.</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| Authenticate Mode             | Specifies the authentication mode: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>none</b> – No authentication is set.</li> <li>• <b>Pre-shared secret</b> – Specifies the shared key function for both sides of the tunnel.</li> <li>• <b>Username/password</b> – Specifies authentication using a CA Certificate, Username and Password.</li> <li>• <b>X.509 Certificate (multiclient)</b> – Activates the X.509 authentication in multi-client mode.</li> <li>• <b>X.509 Certificate (client)</b> – Activates the X.509 authentication in client mode.</li> <li>• <b>X.509 Certificate (server)</b> – Activates the X.509 authentication in server mode.</li> </ul> |

Continued on next page

Continued from previous page

| Item                            | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|---------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Security Mode                   | Choose the security mode, <i>tls-auth</i> or <i>tls-crypt</i> . We recommend to use the <i>tls-crypt</i> mode for the security reasons. In this mode, all the data is encrypted with a pre-shared key. Moreover, this mode is more robust against the TLS denial of service attacks.                                                                                                                                                             |
| Pre-shared Secret               | Specifies the pre-shared secret which you can use for every authentication mode.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| CA Certificate                  | Specifies the CA Certificate which you can use for the username/password and X.509 Certificate authentication modes.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| DH Parameters                   | Specifies the protocol for the DH parameters key exchange which you can use for X.509 Certificate authentication in the server mode.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| Local Certificate               | Specifies the certificate used in the local device. You can use this authentication certificate for the X.509 Certificate authentication mode.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| Local Private Key               | Specifies the key used in the local device. You can use the key for the X.509 Certificate authentication mode.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| Local Passphrase                | Passphrase used during private key generation.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| Username                        | Specifies a login name which you can use for authentication in the username/password mode.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Password                        | Specifies a password which you can use for authentication in the username/password mode. Enter valid characters only, see chap. 1.2.1!                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| Security Level                  | Set the Security Level <sup>1</sup> : <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>0 - Weak</b> – [Default] Everything is permitted. This setting is not recommended; it is advisable to set a higher security level!</li> <li>• <b>1 - Low</b> – 80 bits of security.</li> <li>• <b>2 - Medium</b> – 112 bits of security.</li> <li>• <b>3 - High</b> – 128 bits of security.</li> <li>• <b>4 - Very High</b> – 192 bits of security.</li> </ul> |
| User's Up Script <sup>3</sup>   | Custom script, executed when the OpenVPN tunnel is established.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| User's Down Script <sup>3</sup> | Custom script, executed when the OpenVPN tunnel is closed.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Extra Options                   | Specifies additional parameters for the OpenVPN tunnel, such as DHCP options. The parameters are proceeded by two dashes. For possible parameters see the help text in the router using SSH – run the <code>openvpnd --help</code> command.                                                                                                                                                                                                      |

Table 38: OpenVPN Configuration



There is a condition for tunnel to be established: WAN route has to be active (for example mobile connection established) even if the tunnel does not go through the WAN.

The changes in settings will apply after pressing the *Apply* button.

<sup>1</sup>For detailed explanation see the *Security Guidelines* [15], specifically the chapter on *Cryptographic algorithms*.

<sup>3</sup>Parameters passed to the script are `cmd tun_dev tun_mtu link_mtu ifconfig_local_ip ifconfig_remote_ip [ init | restart ]`, see *Reference manual for OpenVPN*, option `-up cmd`.

| 1st OpenVPN Tunnel Configuration                   |                                                                                    |
|----------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> Create 1st OpenVPN tunnel |                                                                                    |
| Description *                                      | <input type="text"/>                                                               |
| Interface Type                                     | TUN ▼                                                                              |
| Protocol                                           | UDP ▼                                                                              |
| UDP Port                                           | 1194                                                                               |
| 1st Remote IP Address *                            | <input type="text"/>                                                               |
| 2nd Remote IP Address *                            | <input type="text"/>                                                               |
| Remote Subnet *                                    | <input type="text"/>                                                               |
| Remote Subnet Mask *                               | <input type="text"/>                                                               |
| Redirect Gateway                                   | no ▼                                                                               |
| Local Interface IP Address                         | <input type="text"/>                                                               |
| Remote Interface IP Address                        | <input type="text"/>                                                               |
| Remote IPv6 Subnet *                               | <input type="text"/>                                                               |
| Remote IPv6 Subnet Prefix Length *                 | <input type="text"/>                                                               |
| Local Interface IPv6 Address *                     | <input type="text"/>                                                               |
| Remote Interface IPv6 Address *                    | <input type="text"/>                                                               |
| Ping Interval *                                    | <input type="text"/> sec                                                           |
| Ping Timeout *                                     | <input type="text"/> sec                                                           |
| Renegotiate Interval *                             | <input type="text"/> sec                                                           |
| Max Fragment Size *                                | <input type="text"/> bytes                                                         |
| Compression                                        | LZO ▼                                                                              |
| NAT Rules                                          | not applied ▼                                                                      |
| Authenticate Mode                                  | none ▼                                                                             |
| Security Mode                                      | tls-auth ▼                                                                         |
| Pre-shared Secret                                  | <input type="text"/>                                                               |
| CA Certificate                                     | <input type="text"/>                                                               |
| DH Parameters                                      | <input type="text"/>                                                               |
| Local Certificate                                  | <input type="text"/>                                                               |
| Local Private Key                                  | <input type="text"/>                                                               |
| Local Passphrase *                                 | <input type="text"/>                                                               |
| Username                                           | <input type="text"/>                                                               |
| Password                                           | <input type="text"/>                                                               |
| Security Level                                     | 0 - Weak ▼                                                                         |
| User's Up Script                                   | <pre>#!/bin/sh # # This script will be executed when OpenVPN tunnel is up.</pre>   |
| User's Down Script                                 | <pre>#!/bin/sh # # This script will be executed when OpenVPN tunnel is down.</pre> |
| Extra Options *                                    | <input type="text"/>                                                               |
| * can be blank                                     |                                                                                    |
| <input type="button" value="Apply"/>               |                                                                                    |

Figure 52: OpenVPN tunnel configuration

### 3.11.1 Example of the OpenVPN Tunnel Configuration in IPv4 Network

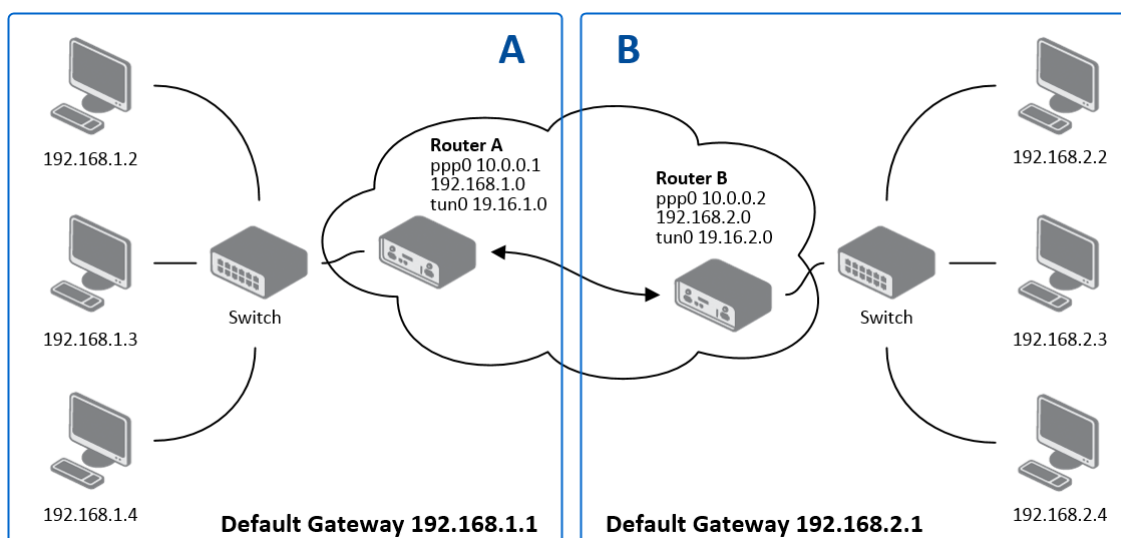


Figure 53: Topology of OpenVPN Configuration Example

OpenVPN tunnel configuration:

| Configuration               | A             | B             |
|-----------------------------|---------------|---------------|
| Protocol                    | UDP           | UDP           |
| UDP Port                    | 1194          | 1194          |
| Remote IP Address           | 10.0.0.2      | 10.0.0.1      |
| Remote Subnet               | 192.168.2.0   | 192.168.1.0   |
| Remote Subnet Mask          | 255.255.255.0 | 255.255.255.0 |
| Local Interface IP Address  | 19.16.1.0     | 19.16.2.0     |
| Remote Interface IP Address | 19.16.2.0     | 19.16.1.0     |
| Compression                 | LZO           | LZO           |
| Authenticate mode           | none          | none          |

Table 39: OpenVPN Configuration Example



Examples of different options for configuration and authentication of OpenVPN tunnel can be found in the application note *OpenVPN Tunnel* [5].

## 3.12 IPsec

The IPsec tunnel function allows you to create a secured connection between two separate LAN networks. Advantech routers allows you to create two IPsec tunnels.

To open the IPsec tunnel configuration page, click *IPsec* in the *Configuration* section of the main menu. The menu item will expand and you will see two separate configuration pages: *1st Tunnel* and *2nd Tunnel*. Supported are both, **policy-based** and **route-based** VPN approaches, see the different configuration scenarios in Chapter 3.12.1.

IPv4 and IPv6 tunnels are supported (**dual stack**), you can transport IPv6 traffic through IPv4 tunnel and vice versa. For different IPsec authentication scenarios, see Chapter 3.12.2.



To encrypt data between the local and remote subnets, specify the appropriate values in the subnet fields on both routers. To encrypt the data stream between the routers only, leave the local and remote subnets fields blank.



If you specify the protocol and port information in the *Local Protocol/Port* field, then the router encapsulates only the packets matching the settings.



For optimal an secure setup, we recommend to follow instructions on the [Security Recommendations strongSwan](#) web page.



Detailed information and more examples of IPsec tunnel configuration and authentication can be found in the application note *IPsec Tunnel* [6].

### 3.12.1 Route-based Configuration Scenarios

There are more different route-based configuration options which can be configured and used in Advantech routers. Below are listed the most common cases which can be used (for more details see [Route-based VPNs strongSwan](#) web page):

#### 1. Enabled Installing Routes

- Remote (local) subnets are used as traffic selectors (routes).
- It results to the same outcome as a policy-based VPN.
- One benefit of this approach is the possibility to verify non-encrypted traffic passed through an IPsec tunnel number X by tcpdump tool: `tcpdump -i ipsecX`.
- Set up the *Install Routes* to *yes* option.

**2. Static Routes**

- Routes are installed statically by an application as soon as the IPsec tunnel is up.
- As an application for static routes installation can be used for example FRR/STATICD application.
- Set up the *Install Routes* to *no* option.

**3. Dynamic Routing**

- Routes are installed dynamically while running by an application using a dynamic protocol.
- As an application for dynamic routes installation can be used for example FRR/BGP or FRR/OSPF application. This application gains the routes dynamically from an (BGP, OSPF) server.
- Set up the *Install Routes* to *no* option.

**4. Multiple Clients**

- Allows to create VPN network with multiple clients. One Advantech router acts as the server and assigns IP address to all the clients on the network.
- The server has *Remote Virtual Network* and *Remote Virtual Mask* items configured and the client has *Local Virtual Address* item configured.
- Set up the *Install Routes* to *yes* option.

**3.12.2 IPsec Authentication Scenarios**

There are four basic authentication options which can be configured and used in Advantech routers:

**1. Pre-shared Key**

- Set *Authenticate Mode* to *pre-shared key* option.
- Enter the shared key to the *Pre-shared key* field.

**2. Public Key**

- Set *Authenticate Mode* to *X.509 certificate* option.
- Enter the public key to the *Local Certificate / PubKey* field.
- CA certificate is not required.

**3. Peer Certificate**

- Set *Authenticate Mode* to *X.509 certificate* option.
- Enter the remote key to the *Remote Certificate / PubKey* field. Users with this certificate will be allowed.
- CA certificate is not required.

**4. CA Certificate**

- Set *Authenticate Mode* to *X.509 certificate* option.
- Enter the CA certificate or a list of CA certificates to the *CA Certificate* field. Any certificate signed by the CA will be accepted.
- Remote certificate is not required.

**Notes:**

- The Peer and CA Certificate (options 3 and 4) can be configured and used simultaneously – authentication can be done by one of this method.
- The Local ID is significant. When using certificate authentication, the IKE identity must be contained in the certificate, either as subject or as *subjectAltName*.

### 3.12.3 Configuration Items Description

The configuration GUI for IPsec is shown in Figure 54 and the description of all items, which can be configured for an IPsec tunnel, are described in Table 40.

| 1st IPsec Tunnel Configuration                   |                                                          |
|--------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> Create 1st IPsec tunnel |                                                          |
| Description *                                    | <input type="text"/>                                     |
| Type                                             | policy-based                                             |
| Host IP Mode                                     | IPv4                                                     |
| 1st Remote IP Address *                          | <input type="text"/>                                     |
| 2nd Remote IP Address *                          | <input type="text"/>                                     |
| Tunnel IP Mode                                   | IPv4                                                     |
| Remote ID *                                      | <input type="text"/>                                     |
| Local ID *                                       | <input type="text"/>                                     |
| Install Routes                                   | yes                                                      |
| First Remote Subnet *                            | <input type="text"/>                                     |
| First Remote Subnet Mask *                       | <input type="text"/>                                     |
| Second Remote Subnet *                           | <input type="text"/>                                     |
| Second Remote Subnet Mask *                      | <input type="text"/>                                     |
| Remote Protocol/Port *                           | <input type="text"/>                                     |
| First Local Subnet *                             | <input type="text"/>                                     |
| First Local Subnet Mask *                        | <input type="text"/>                                     |
| Second Local Subnet *                            | <input type="text"/>                                     |
| Second Local Subnet Mask *                       | <input type="text"/>                                     |
| Local Protocol/Port *                            | <input type="text"/>                                     |
| MTU                                              | 1426 bytes                                               |
| Remote Virtual Network *                         | <input type="text"/>                                     |
| Remote Virtual Mask *                            | <input type="text"/>                                     |
| Local Virtual Address *                          | <input type="text"/>                                     |
| Cisco FlexVPN **                                 | no                                                       |
| Encapsulation Mode                               | tunnel                                                   |
| Force NAT Traversal                              | no                                                       |
| IKE Protocol                                     | IKEv1                                                    |
| IKE Mode                                         | main                                                     |
| IKE Algorithm                                    | auto                                                     |
| IKE Encryption                                   | 3DES                                                     |
| IKE Hash                                         | MD5                                                      |
| IKE DH Group                                     | 2                                                        |
| IKE Reauthentication                             | yes                                                      |
| XAUTH Enabled                                    | no                                                       |
| XAUTH Mode                                       | client                                                   |
| XAUTH Username                                   | <input type="text"/>                                     |
| XAUTH Password                                   | <input type="password"/>                                 |
| ESP Algorithm                                    | auto                                                     |
| ESP Encryption                                   | DES                                                      |
| ESP Hash                                         | MD5                                                      |
| PFS                                              | disabled                                                 |
| PFS DH Group                                     | 2                                                        |
| Key Lifetime                                     | 3600 sec                                                 |
| IKE Lifetime                                     | 3600 sec                                                 |
| Rekey Margin                                     | 540 sec                                                  |
| Rekey Fuzz                                       | 100 %                                                    |
| DPD Delay *                                      | <input type="text"/> sec                                 |
| DPD Timeout *                                    | <input type="text"/> sec                                 |
| Authenticate Mode                                | pre-shared key                                           |
| Pre-shared Key                                   | <input type="password"/>                                 |
| Remote Pre-shared Key *                          | <input type="text"/>                                     |
| CA Certificate *                                 | <input type="text"/> Choose File No file chosen          |
| Remote Certificate / PubKey *                    | <input type="text"/> Choose File No file chosen          |
| Local Certificate / PubKey                       | <input type="text"/> Choose File No file chosen          |
| Local Private Key                                | <input type="text"/> Choose File No file chosen          |
| Local Passphrase *                               | <input type="text"/>                                     |
| Revocation Check                                 | if possible                                              |
| User's Up Script                                 | <pre>#!/bin/sh # # This script will be executed...</pre> |
| User's Down Script                               | <pre>#!/bin/sh # # This script will be executed...</pre> |
| Debug **                                         | control                                                  |
| * can be blank                                   |                                                          |
| ** affects all tunnels                           |                                                          |
| Apply                                            |                                                          |

Figure 54: IPsec Tunnels Configuration

| Item                             | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|----------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Description                      | Name or description of the tunnel.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| Type                             | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>policy-based</b> – Choose for the policy-based VPN approach.</li> <li>• <b>route-based</b> – Choose for the route-based VPN approach.</li> </ul> Note: Data throughput via route-based VPN is slightly lower in comparison with policy-based VPN. |
| Host IP Mode                     | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>IPv4</b> – The router communicates via IPv4 with the opposite side of the tunnel.</li> <li>• <b>IPv6</b> – The router communicates via IPv6 with the opposite side of the tunnel.</li> </ul>                                                      |
| 1st Remote IP Address            | First IPv4, IPv6 address or domain name of the remote side of the tunnel, based on selected <i>Host IP Mode</i> above.                                                                                                                                                                        |
| 2nd Remote IP Address            | Second IPv4, IPv6 address or domain name of the remote side of the tunnel, based on selected <i>Host IP Mode</i> above.                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Tunnel IP Mode                   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>IPv4</b> – The IPv4 communication runs inside the tunnel.</li> <li>• <b>IPv6</b> – The IPv6 communication runs inside the tunnel.</li> </ul>                                                                                                      |
| Remote ID                        | Identifier (ID) of remote side of the tunnel. It consists of two parts: a <i>hostname</i> and a <i>domain-name</i> .                                                                                                                                                                          |
| Local ID                         | Identifier (ID) of local side of the tunnel. It consists of two parts: a <i>hostname</i> and a <i>domain-name</i> .                                                                                                                                                                           |
| Install Routers                  | For route-based type only. Choose <b>yes</b> to use traffic selectors as route(s).                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| First Remote Subnet              | IPv4 or IPv6 address of a network behind remote side of the tunnel, based on <i>Tunnel IP Mode</i> above.                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| First Remote Subnet Mask/Prefix  | IPv4 subnet mask of a network behind remote side of the tunnel, or IPv6 prefix (single number 0 to 128).                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| Second Remote Subnet             | IPv4 or IPv6 address of the second network behind remote side of the tunnel, based on <i>Tunnel IP Mode</i> above. For <i>IKE Protocol</i> = IKEv2 only.                                                                                                                                      |
| Second Remote Subnet Mask/Prefix | IPv4 subnet mask of the second network behind remote side of the tunnel, or IPv6 prefix (single number 0 to 128). For <i>IKE Protocol</i> = IKEv2 only.                                                                                                                                       |
| Remote Protocol/Port             | Specifies Protocol/Port of remote side of the tunnel. The general form is <i>protocol/port</i> , for example 17/1701 for UDP (protocol 17) and port 1701. It is also possible to enter only the number of protocol, however, the above mentioned format is preferred.                         |
| First Local Subnet               | IPv4 or IPv6 address of a local network, based on <i>Tunnel IP Mode</i> above.                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| First Local Subnet Mask/Prefix   | IPv4 subnet mask of a local network, or IPv6 prefix (single number 0 to 128).                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| Second Local Subnet              | IPv4 or IPv6 address of the second local network, based on <i>Tunnel IP Mode</i> above. For <i>IKE Protocol</i> = IKEv2 only.                                                                                                                                                                 |

Continued on next page

Continued from previous page

| Item                            | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|---------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Second Local Subnet Mask/Prefix | IPv4 subnet mask of the second local network, or IPv6 prefix (single number 0 to 128). For <i>IKE Protocol</i> = IKEv2 only.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| Local Protocol/Port             | Specifies Protocol/Port of a local network. The general form is <i>protocol/port</i> , for example 17/1701 for UDP (protocol 17) and port 1701. It is also possible to enter only the number of protocol, however, the above mentioned format is preferred.                                                                                                                                                                       |
| MTU                             | Maximum Transmission Unit value (for route-based mode only). Default value is 1426 bytes.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| Remote Virtual Network          | Specifies virtual remote network for server (responder).                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| Remote Virtual Mask             | Specifies virtual remote network mask for server (responder).                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| Local Virtual Address           | Specifies virtual local network address for client. To get address from server set up the address to 0.0.0.0.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| Cisco FlexVPN                   | Enable to support the Cisco FlexVPN functionality. The <i>route-based</i> type must be chosen. For more information, see <a href="http://strongswan.conf">strongswan.conf</a> page.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| Encapsulation Mode              | Specifies the IPsec mode, according to the method of encapsulation. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>tunnel</b> – entire IP datagram is encapsulated.</li> <li>• <b>transport</b> – only IP header is encapsulated. Not supported by route-based VPN.</li> <li>• <b>beet</b> – the ESP packet is formatted as a transport mode packet, but the semantics of the connection are the same as for tunnel mode.</li> </ul> |
| Force NAT Traversal             | Enable NAT traversal enforcement (UDP encapsulation of ESP packets).                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| IKE Protocol                    | Specifies the version of IKE ( <b>IKEv1/IKEv2</b> , <b>IKEv1</b> or <b>IKEv2</b> ).                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| IKE Mode                        | Specifies the mode for establishing a connection ( <i>main</i> or <i>aggressive</i> ). If you select the aggressive mode, then the router establishes the IPsec tunnel faster, but the encryption is permanently set to 3DES-MD5. <b>We recommend that you not use the aggressive mode due to lower security!</b>                                                                                                                 |
| IKE Algorithm                   | Specifies the means by which the router selects the algorithm: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>auto</b> – The encryption and hash algorithm are selected automatically.</li> <li>• <b>manual</b> – The encryption and hash algorithm are defined by the user.</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                              |
| IKE Encryption                  | Encryption algorithm – <b>3DES</b> , <b>AES128</b> , <b>AES192</b> , <b>AES256</b> , <b>AES128GCM128</b> , <b>AES192GCM128</b> , <b>AES256GCM128</b> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| IKE Hash                        | Hash algorithm – <b>MD5</b> , <b>SHA1</b> , <b>SHA256</b> , <b>SHA384</b> or <b>SHA512</b> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |

Continued on next page

Continued from previous page

| Item                   | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| IKE DH Group           | Specifies the Diffie-Hellman groups which determine the strength of the key used in the key exchange process. Higher group numbers are more secure, but require more time to compute the key.                                                                                        |
| IKE Reauthentication   | Enable or disable IKE reauthentication (for IKEv2 only).                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| XAUTH Enabled          | Enable extended authentication (for IKEv1 only).                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| XAUTH Mode             | Select XAUTH mode (client or server).                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| XAUTH Username         | XAUTH username.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| XAUTH Password         | XAUTH password.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| ESP Algorithm          | Specifies the means by which the router selects the algorithm: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>auto</b> – The encryption and hash algorithm are selected automatically.</li> <li>• <b>manual</b> – The encryption and hash algorithm are defined by the user.</li> </ul> |
| ESP Encryption         | Encryption algorithm – <b>3DES, AES128, AES192, AES256, AES128GCM128, AES192GCM128, AES256GCM128</b> .                                                                                                                                                                               |
| ESP Hash               | Hash algorithm – <b>MD5, SHA1, SHA256, SHA384 or SHA512</b> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| PFS                    | Enables/disables the <i>Perfect Forward Secrecy</i> function. The function ensures that derived session keys are not compromised if one of the private keys is compromised in the future.                                                                                            |
| PFS DH Group           | Specifies the Diffie-Hellman group number (see <i>IKE DH Group</i> ).                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| Key Lifetime           | Lifetime key data part of tunnel. The minimum value of this parameter is 60 s. The maximum value is 86400 s.                                                                                                                                                                         |
| IKE Lifetime           | Lifetime key service part of tunnel. The minimum value of this parameter is 60 s. The maximum value is 86400 s.                                                                                                                                                                      |
| Rekey Margin           | Specifies how long before a connection expires that the router attempts to negotiate a replacement. Specify a maximum value that is less than half of IKE and Key Lifetime parameters.                                                                                               |
| Rekey Fuzz             | Percentage of time for the Rekey Margin extension.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| DPD Delay              | Time after which the IPsec tunnel functionality is tested.                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| DPD Timeout            | The period during which device waits for a response.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| Authenticate Mode      | Specifies the means by which the router authenticates: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Pre-shared key</b> – Sets the shared key for both sides of the tunnel.</li> <li>• <b>X.509 Certificate</b> – Allows X.509 authentication in multiclient mode.</li> </ul>          |
| (Local) Pre-shared Key | Specifies the shared key (local for IKEv2) for both sides of the tunnel. The prerequisite for entering a key is that you select pre-shared key as the authentication mode.                                                                                                           |
| Remote Pre-shared Key  | Specifies the remote shared key (for IKEv2) for both sides of the tunnel. The prerequisite for entering a key is that you select pre-shared key as the authentication mode.                                                                                                          |

Continued on next page

Continued from previous page

| Item                            | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|---------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| CA Certificate                  | Certificate for X.509 authentication.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| Remote Certificate \ PubKey     | Certificate for X.509 authentication or PubKey for public key signature authentication.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| Local Certificate \ PubKey      | Certificate for X.509 authentication or PubKey for public key signature authentication.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| Local Private Key               | Private key for X.509 authentication.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| Local Passphrase                | Passphrase used during private key generation.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| Revocation Check                | Certificate revocation policy: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>if possible</b> – Fails only if a certificate is revoked, i.e. it is explicitly known that it is bad.</li> <li>• <b>if URI defined</b> – Fails only if a CRL/OCSP URI is available, but certificate revocation checking fails, i.e. there should be revocation information available, but it could not be obtained.</li> <li>• <b>always</b> – Fails if no revocation information is available, i.e. the certificate is not known to be unrevoked.</li> </ul> |
| User's Up Script <sup>1</sup>   | Custom script, executed when the IPsec tunnel is established.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| User's Down Script <sup>1</sup> | Custom script, executed when the IPsec tunnel is closed.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| Debug                           | Choose the level of logging verbosity from: <b>silent</b> , <b>audit</b> , <b>control</b> (default), <b>control-more</b> , <b>raw</b> , <b>private</b> (most verbose including the private keys). See <a href="#">Logger Configuration</a> in <i>strongSwan</i> web page for more details.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |

Table 40: IPsec Tunnel Configuration

We recommend that you keep up the default settings. When you set key exchange times higher, the tunnel produces lower operating costs, but the setting also provides less security. Conversely, when you reducing the time, the tunnel produces higher operating costs, but provides for higher security. The changes in settings will apply after clicking the *Apply* button.

**Do not miss:**

- If local and remote subnets are not configured then only packets between local and remote IP address are encapsulated, so only communication between two routers is encrypted.
- If protocol/port fields are configured then only packets matching these settings are encapsulated.

<sup>1</sup>Parameters passed to the script:

for policy-based type: one parameter: *connection name*, returns e.g. *ipsec1-1*,

for route-based type: two parameters: *connection name* and *interface name*, returns e.g. *ipsec1-1* and *ipsec0*.

### 3.12.4 Basic IPv4 IPsec Tunnel Configuration

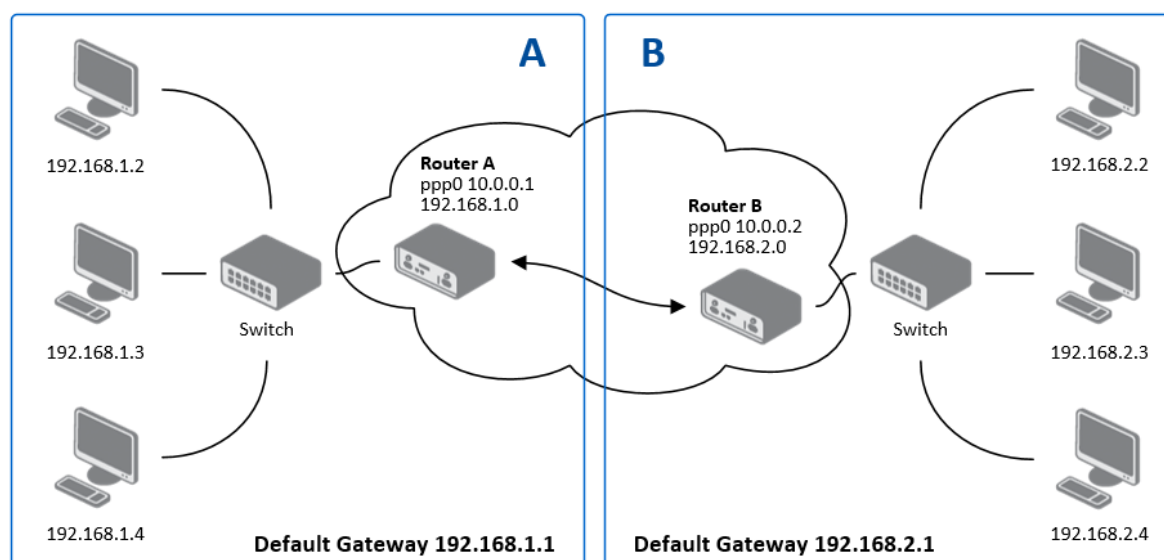


Figure 55: Topology of IPsec Configuration Example

Configuration of *Router A* and *Router B* is as follows:

| Configuration            | A              | B              |
|--------------------------|----------------|----------------|
| Host IP Mode             | IPv4           | IPv4           |
| 1st Remote IP Address    | 10.0.0.2       | 10.0.0.1       |
| Tunnel IP Mode           | IPv4           | IPv4           |
| First Remote Subnet      | 192.168.2.0    | 192.168.1.0    |
| First Remote Subnet Mask | 255.255.255.0  | 255.255.255.0  |
| First Local Subnet       | 192.168.1.0    | 192.168.2.0    |
| First Local Subnet Mask  | 255.255.255.0  | 255.255.255.0  |
| Authenticate mode        | pre-shared key | pre-shared key |
| Pre-shared key           | test           | test           |

Table 41: Simple IPv4 IPsec Tunnel Configuration

### 3.13 WireGuard

WireGuard is a communication protocol and free open-source software that implements encrypted virtual private networks (VPNs), and was designed with the goals of ease of use, high speed performance, and low attack surface. It aims for better performance and more power than IPsec and OpenVPN, two common tunneling protocols. The WireGuard protocol passes traffic over UDP. Advantech routers allows you to create two WireGuard tunnels.

To open the WireGuard tunnel configuration page, click *WireGuard* in the *Configuration* section of the main menu. The menu item will expand and you will see two separate configuration pages: *1st Tunnel* and *2nd Tunnel*.

IPv4 and IPv6 tunnels are supported (**dual stack**), you can transport IPv6 traffic through IPv4 tunnel and vice versa.



Detailed information and more examples of WireGuard tunnel configuration and authentication can be found in the application note *WireGuard Tunnel* [8].

The configuration GUI for WireGuard is shown in Figure 56 and the description of all items, which can be configured for an WireGuard tunnel, are described in Table 42.

| 1st WireGuard Tunnel Configuration                   |                                                              |
|------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> Create 1st WireGuard tunnel |                                                              |
| Description *                                        | <input type="text"/>                                         |
| Host IP Mode                                         | IPv4 ▼                                                       |
| Remote IP Address *                                  | <input type="text"/>                                         |
| Remote Port *                                        | <input type="text"/>                                         |
| Local Port                                           | 51820                                                        |
| NAT/Firewall Traversal                               | no ▼                                                         |
| Interface IPv4 Address *                             | <input type="text"/>                                         |
| Interface IPv4 Prefix Length *                       | <input type="text"/>                                         |
| Interface IPv6 Address *                             | <input type="text"/>                                         |
| Interface IPv6 Prefix Length *                       | <input type="text"/>                                         |
| Install Routes                                       | yes ▼                                                        |
| Traffic Selector                                     | subnets ▼                                                    |
| Remote Subnets *                                     | <input type="text"/>                                         |
|                                                      | <input type="text"/>                                         |
|                                                      | <input type="text"/>                                         |
|                                                      | <input type="text"/>                                         |
| Pre-shared Key *                                     | <input type="text"/> <input type="button" value="Generate"/> |
| Local Private Key                                    | <input type="text"/> <input type="button" value="Generate"/> |
| Local Public Key *                                   | <input type="text"/>                                         |
| Remote Public Key                                    | <input type="text"/>                                         |
| * can be blank                                       |                                                              |
| <input type="button" value="Apply"/>                 |                                                              |

Figure 56: WireGuard Tunnels Configuration

| Item                   | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Description            | Name or description of the tunnel.                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Host IP Mode           | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>IPv4</b> – The router communicates via IPv4 with the opposite side of the tunnel.</li> <li>• <b>IPv6</b> – The router communicates via IPv6 with the opposite side of the tunnel.</li> </ul> |
| Remote IP Address      | IPv4, IPv6 address or domain name of the remote side of the tunnel to connect to. The address must match with the selected <i>Host IP Mode</i> above.                                                                                    |
| Remote Port            | Port of the remote side of the tunnel.                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| Local Port             | Port of the local side of the tunnel (default port is 51820).                                                                                                                                                                            |
| NAT/Firewall Traversal | If set up to <i>yes</i> , keepalive communication (every 25 seconds) is running to preserve the tunnel established. It is useful when a client is running behind the NAT.                                                                |

Continued on next page

Continued from previous page

| Item                         | Description                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Interface IPv4 Address       | Local IPv4 tunnel interface address.                                                                                                                                                           |
| Interface IPv4 Prefix Length | Local IPv4 tunnel interface prefix.                                                                                                                                                            |
| Interface IPv6 Address       | Local IPv6 tunnel interface address.                                                                                                                                                           |
| Interface IPv6 Prefix Length | Local IPv6 tunnel interface prefix.                                                                                                                                                            |
| Install Routes               | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>no</b> – Do not install routes. Use when a dynamic routing protocol is configured.</li> <li>• <b>yes</b> – Install routes.</li> </ul>              |
| Traffic Selector             | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>all traffic</b> – Procced all the packets to the WireGuard tunnel.</li> <li>• <b>subnets</b> – Route based on the subnets listed below.</li> </ul> |
| Remote Subnets               | If the <i>Traffic Selector</i> is set to <i>subnets</i> , then other subnets (routes) can be routed through the wire tunnel.                                                                   |
| Pre-shared Key               | The optional key for additional encryption layer and security strengthening. You can use the <i>Generate</i> button to generate a random key.                                                  |
| Local Private Key            | The private key of the local side. You can use the <i>Generate</i> button to generate a random key.                                                                                            |
| Local Public Key             | The public key of the local tunnel side.                                                                                                                                                       |
| Remote Public Key            | The public key of the remote tunnel side.                                                                                                                                                      |

Table 42: WireGuard Tunnel Configuration

The changes in settings will apply after clicking the *Apply* button.

### 3.13.1 WireGuard IPv4 Tunnel Configuration Example

There is an example of WireGuard IPv4 tunnel configuration between *Router A* and *Router B*.

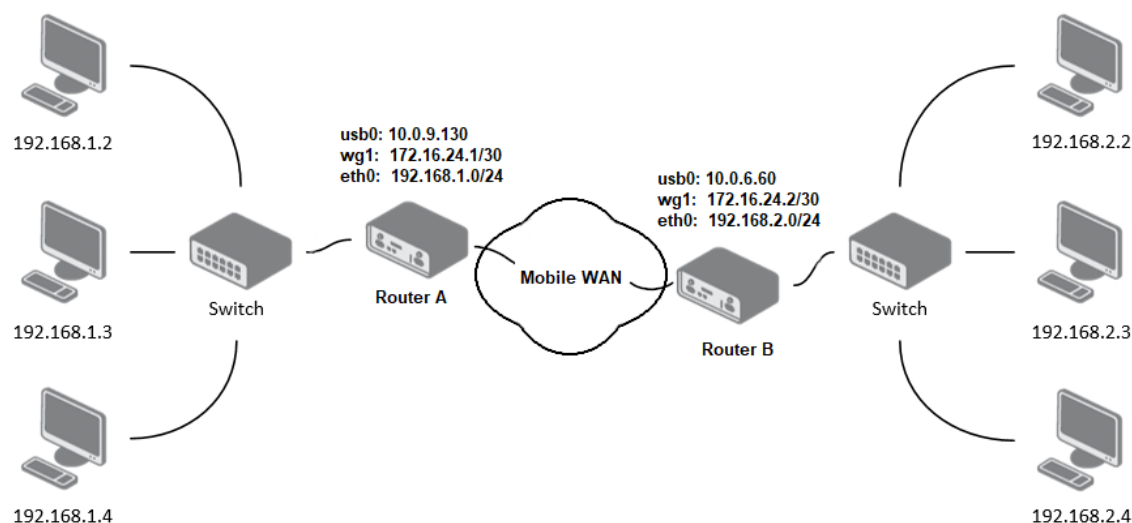


Figure 57: Topology of WireGuard Configuration Example

*Router B* is configured to listen, and *Router A* is the side initiating the tunnel connection. Configuration of *Router A* and *Router B* from the topology above is as follows:

| Configuration                | Router A                                 | Router B                                 |
|------------------------------|------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|
| Host IP Mode                 | IPv4                                     | IPv4                                     |
| Remote IP Address            | 10.0.6.60                                | —                                        |
| Remote Port                  | 51820                                    | —                                        |
| Local Port                   | 51820                                    | 51820                                    |
| NAT/Firewall Traversal       | yes                                      | no                                       |
| Interface IPv4 Address       | 172.16.24.1                              | 172.16.24.2                              |
| Interface IPv4 Prefix Length | 30                                       | 30                                       |
| Install Routes               | yes                                      | yes                                      |
| Traffic Selector             | subnets                                  | subnets                                  |
| Remote Subnets               | 192.168.2.0/24                           | 192.168.1.0/24                           |
| Local Private Key            | <i>a local private key</i>               | <i>a local private key</i>               |
| Local Public Key             | <i>a local public key</i>                | <i>a local public key</i>                |
| Remote Public Key            | <i>a public key of the opposite side</i> | <i>a public key of the opposite side</i> |

Table 43: WireGuard IPv4 Tunnel Configuration Example

In the figure below is the WireGuard status page of *Router A*. If the tunnel connection is established successfully, the *Latest handshake* time is shown here. This value is the time left from the latest successful communication with the opposite tunnel side. This item will not be shown here until there is a tunnel communication (data sent by the *Router A* or the keepalive data sent when *NAT/Firewall Traversal* is set to yes).

| 1st WireGuard Tunnel Information                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |                 |                 |       |        |     |     |       |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------|-----------------|-------|--------|-----|-----|-------|
| <pre> interface: wg1   public key: jY1VmPwwlmzoC3y6xUX7dbXeDfvrRJxL42f4xOA4FkA=   private key: (hidden)   listening port: 51820  peer: 3/L9L9REE6BM1zO3CgET4r2N3QPKPTK/9yAj1hOq0n4=   endpoint: 10.0.6.60:51820   allowed ips: 172.16.24.0/30, 192.168.2.0/24   latest handshake: 1 minute, 17 seconds ago   transfer: 644 B received, 2.26 KiB sent   persistent keepalive: every 25 seconds           </pre> |                 |                 |       |        |     |     |       |
| Route Table                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |                 |                 |       |        |     |     |       |
| Destination                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | Gateway         | Genmask         | Flags | Metric | Ref | Use | Iface |
| 0.0.0.0                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | 192.168.253.254 | 0.0.0.0         | UG    | 0      | 0   | 0   | usb0  |
| 172.16.24.0                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | 0.0.0.0         | 255.255.255.252 | U     | 0      | 0   | 0   | wg1   |
| 192.168.2.0                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | 0.0.0.0         | 255.255.255.0   | U     | 0      | 0   | 0   | wg1   |
| 192.168.7.0                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | 0.0.0.0         | 255.255.255.0   | U     | 0      | 0   | 0   | eth1  |
| 192.168.11.0                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | 0.0.0.0         | 255.255.255.0   | U     | 0      | 0   | 0   | eth0  |
| 192.168.253.254                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | 0.0.0.0         | 255.255.255.255 | UH    | 0      | 0   | 0   | usb0  |

Figure 58: Router A – WireGuard Status Page and Route Table

| 1st WireGuard Tunnel Information                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |                 |                 |       |        |     |     |       |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------|-----------------|-------|--------|-----|-----|-------|
| <pre> interface: wg1   public key: 3/L9L9REE6BM1zO3CgET4r2N3QPKPTK/9yAj1hOq0n4=   private key: (hidden)   listening port: 51820  peer: jY1VmPwwlmzoC3y6xUX7dbXeDfvrRJxL42f4xOA4FkA=   endpoint: 10.0.9.130:51820   allowed ips: 172.16.24.0/30, 192.168.1.0/24   latest handshake: 1 minute, 22 seconds ago   transfer: 2.59 KiB received, 736 B sent           </pre> |                 |                 |       |        |     |     |       |
| Route Table                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |                 |                 |       |        |     |     |       |
| Destination                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | Gateway         | Genmask         | Flags | Metric | Ref | Use | Iface |
| 0.0.0.0                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | 192.168.253.254 | 0.0.0.0         | UG    | 0      | 0   | 0   | usb0  |
| 10.1.0.0                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | 0.0.0.0         | 255.255.255.0   | U     | 0      | 0   | 0   | eth2  |
| 172.16.24.0                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | 0.0.0.0         | 255.255.255.252 | U     | 0      | 0   | 0   | wg1   |
| 192.168.1.0                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | 0.0.0.0         | 255.255.255.0   | U     | 0      | 0   | 0   | wg1   |
| 192.168.7.0                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | 0.0.0.0         | 255.255.255.0   | U     | 0      | 0   | 0   | eth1  |
| 192.168.100.0                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | 0.0.0.0         | 255.255.255.0   | U     | 0      | 0   | 0   | eth0  |
| 192.168.253.254                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | 0.0.0.0         | 255.255.255.255 | UH    | 0      | 0   | 0   | usb0  |

Figure 59: Router B – WireGuard Status Page and Route Table

## 3.14 GRE



GRE is an unencrypted protocol. GRE via IPv6 is not supported.

To open the *GRE Tunnel Configuration* page, click *GRE* in the *Configuration* section of the main menu. The menu item will expand and you will see two separate configuration pages: *1st Tunnel* and *2nd Tunnel*. The GRE tunnel function allows you to create an unencrypted connection between two separate LAN networks. The router allows you to create four GRE tunnels.

| Item                        | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Description                 | Description of the GRE tunnel.                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| Remote IP Address           | IP address of the remote side of the tunnel.                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| Local IP Address            | IP address of the local side of the tunnel.                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| Remote Subnet               | IP address of the network behind the remote side of the tunnel.                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| Remote Subnet Mask          | Specifies the mask of the network behind the remote side of the tunnel.                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| Local Interface IP Address  | IP address of the local side of the tunnel.                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| Remote Interface IP Address | IP address of the remote side of the tunnel.                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| Multicasts                  | Activates/deactivates sending multicast into the GRE tunnel: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <b>disabled</b> – Sending multicast into the tunnel is inactive.</li><li>• <b>enabled</b> – Sending multicast into the tunnel is active.</li></ul> |
| Pre-shared Key              | Specifies an optional value for the 32 bit shared key in numeric format, with this key the router sends the filtered data through the tunnel. Specify the same key on both routers, otherwise the router drops received packets.                        |

Table 44: GRE Tunnel Configuration



The GRE tunnel cannot pass through the NAT.

The changes in settings will apply after pressing the *Apply* button.

1st GRE Tunnel Configuration

☐ Create 1st GRE tunnel

Description \*

Remote IP Address \*

Local IP Address \*

Remote Subnet \*

Remote Subnet Mask \*

Local Interface IP Address \*

Remote Interface IP Address \*

Multicasts

disabled

Pre-shared Key \*

\* can be blank

Apply

Figure 60: GRE Tunnel Configuration

3.14.1 Example of the GRE Tunnel Configuration

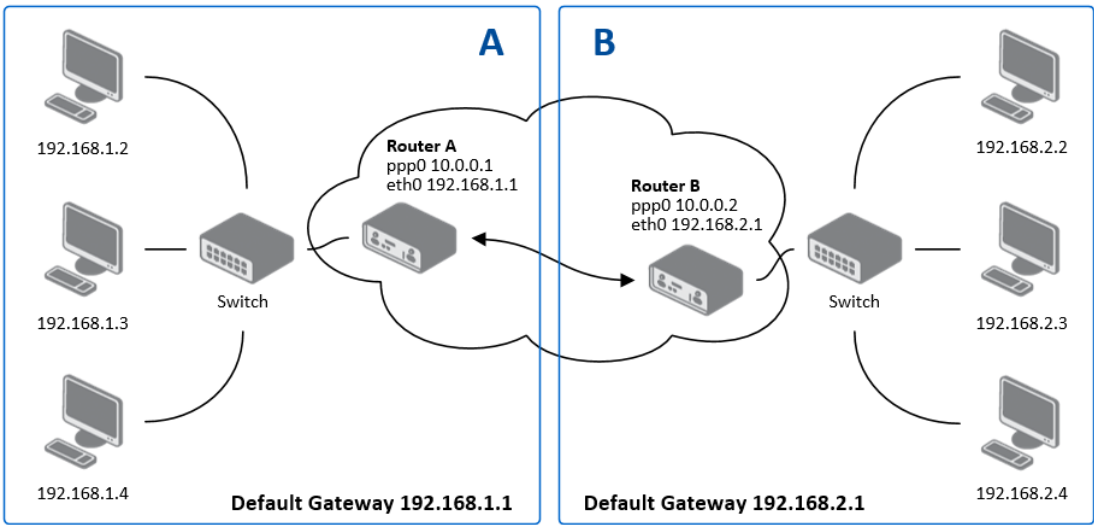


Figure 61: Topology of GRE Tunnel Configuration Example

GRE tunnel configuration:

| Configuration      | A             | B             |
|--------------------|---------------|---------------|
| Remote IP Address  | 10.0.0.2      | 10.0.0.1      |
| Remote Subnet      | 192.168.2.0   | 192.168.1.0   |
| Remote Subnet Mask | 255.255.255.0 | 255.255.255.0 |

Table 45: GRE Tunnel Configuration Example



Examples of different options for configuration of GRE tunnel can be found in the application note *GRE Tunnel* [7].

### 3.15 L2TP



L2TP is an unencrypted protocol. L2TP via IPv6 is not supported.

To open the *L2TP Tunnel Configuration* page, click *L2TP* in the *Configuration* section of the main menu. The L2TP tunnel function allows you to create a password-protected connection between two different LAN networks. Enable the *Create L2TP tunnel* checkbox to activate the tunnel.

Figure 62: L2TP Tunnel Configuration

| Item                    | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|-------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Mode                    | Specifies the L2TP tunnel mode on the router side: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>L2TP server</b> – Specify an IP address range offered by the server.</li> <li>• <b>L2TP client</b> – Specify the IP address of the server.</li> </ul> |
| Server IP Address       | IP address of the server.                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| Client Start IP Address | IP address to start with in the address range. The range is offered by the server to the clients.                                                                                                                                                    |
| Client End IP Address   | The last IP address in the address range. The range is offered by the server to the clients.                                                                                                                                                         |
| Local IP Address        | IP address of the local side of the tunnel.                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| Remote IP Address       | IP address of the remote side of the tunnel.                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| Remote Subnet           | Address of the network behind the remote side of the tunnel.                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| Remote Subnet Mask      | The mask of the network behind the remote side of the tunnel.                                                                                                                                                                                        |

Continued on next page

Continued from previous page

| Item     | Description                                                      |
|----------|------------------------------------------------------------------|
| MRU      | Maximum Receive Unit value. Default value is 1400 bytes.         |
| MTU      | Maximum Transmission Unit value. Default value is 1400 bytes.    |
| Username | Username for the L2TP tunnel login.                              |
| Password | Password for the L2TP tunnel login. Enter valid characters only. |

Table 46: L2TP Tunnel Configuration

3.15.1 Example of the L2TP Tunnel Configuration

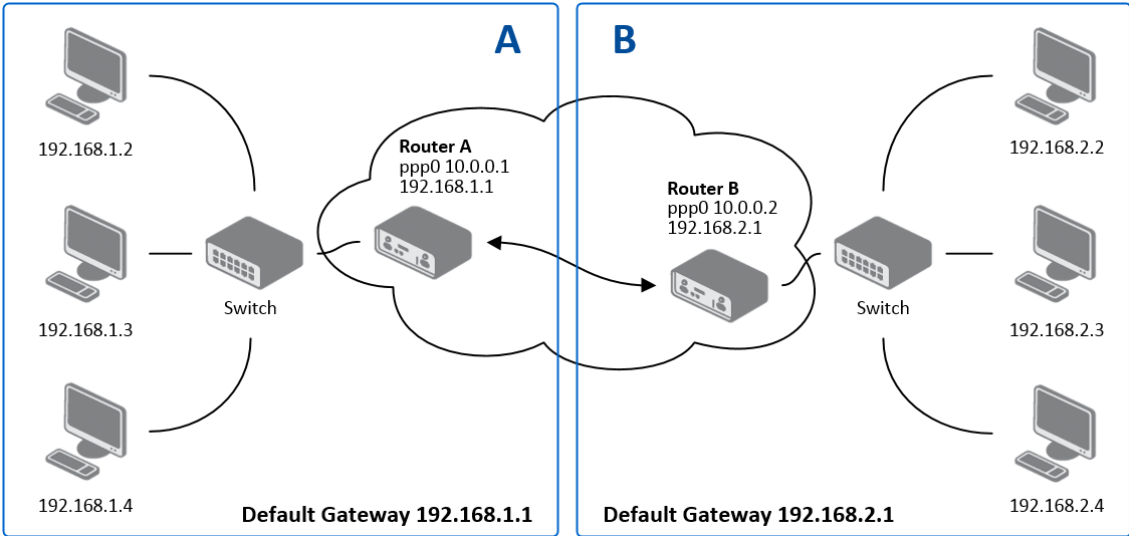


Figure 63: Topology of L2TP Tunnel Configuration Example

Configuration of the L2TP tunnel:

| Configuration           | A             | B             |
|-------------------------|---------------|---------------|
| Mode                    | L2TP Server   | L2TP Client   |
| Server IP Address       | —             | 10.0.0.1      |
| Client Start IP Address | 192.168.2.5   | —             |
| Client End IP Address   | 192.168.2.254 | —             |
| Local IP Address        | 192.168.1.1   | —             |
| Remote IP Address       | —             | —             |
| Remote Subnet           | 192.168.2.0   | 192.168.1.0   |
| Remote Subnet Mask      | 255.255.255.0 | 255.255.255.0 |
| Username                | username      | username      |
| Password                | password      | password      |

Table 47: L2TP Tunnel Configuration Example

## 3.16 PPTP



PPTP is an unencrypted protocol. PPTP via IPv6 is not supported.

Select the *PPTP* item in the menu to configure a PPTP tunnel. PPTP tunnel allows password-protected connections between two LANs. It is similar to L2TP. The tunnels are active after selecting *Create PPTP tunnel*.

Figure 64: PPTP Tunnel Configuration

| Item               | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|--------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Mode               | Specifies the L2TP tunnel mode on the router side: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>PPTP server</b> – Specify an IP address range offered by the server.</li> <li>• <b>PPTP client</b> – Specify the IP address of the server.</li> </ul> |
| Server IP Address  | IP address of the server.                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| Local IP Address   | IP address of the local side of the tunnel.                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| Remote IP Address  | IP address of the remote side of the tunnel.                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| Remote Subnet      | Address of the network behind the remote side of the tunnel.                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| Remote Subnet Mask | The mask of the network behind the remote side of the tunnel                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| MRU                | Maximum Receive Unit value. Default value is 1460 bytes to avoid fragmented packets.                                                                                                                                                                 |
| MTU                | Maximum Transmission Unit value. Default value is 1460 bytes to avoid fragmented packets.                                                                                                                                                            |

Continued on next page

Continued from previous page

| Item     | Description                                                      |
|----------|------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Username | Username for the PPTP tunnel login.                              |
| Password | Password for the PPTP tunnel login. Enter valid characters only. |

Table 48: PPTP Tunnel Configuration

The changes in settings will apply after pressing the *Apply* button.



The firmware also supports PPTP passthrough, which means that it is possible to create a tunnel through the router.

3.16.1 Example of the PPTP Tunnel Configuration

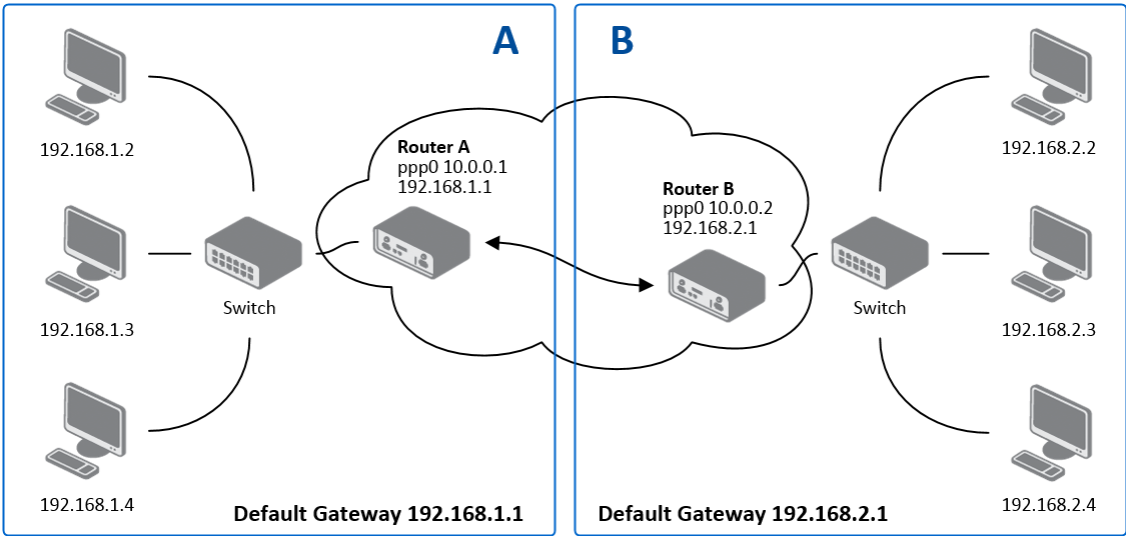


Figure 65: Topology of PPTP Tunnel Configuration Example

Configuration of the PPTP tunnel:

| Configuration      | A             | B             |
|--------------------|---------------|---------------|
| Mode               | PPTP Server   | PPTP Client   |
| Server IP Address  | —             | 10.0.0.1      |
| Local IP Address   | 192.168.1.1   | —             |
| Remote IP Address  | 192.168.2.1   | —             |
| Remote Subnet      | 192.168.2.0   | 192.168.1.0   |
| Remote Subnet Mask | 255.255.255.0 | 255.255.255.0 |
| Username           | username      | username      |
| Password           | password      | password      |

Table 49: PPTP Tunnel Configuration Example

## 3.17 Services

### 3.17.1 Authentication

User authentication options can be configured on the *Configuration → Authentication* page. Figure 66 shows the configuration for *local user database* mode. Table 50 describes configuration items for *local user database* mode that are common to all other modes as well.

| Authentication Configuration |                       |
|------------------------------|-----------------------|
| Two-Factor Authentication    | disabled ▼            |
| Mode                         | local user database ▼ |
| Lock Account After           | 3 fail(s)             |
| Count Fails For              | 3600 sec              |
| Unlock After                 | 60 sec                |
| Force Password Complexity    | good ▼                |
| Expire Password After *      | days                  |
| Delay After Fail *           | 1 sec                 |
| Debug                        | disabled ▼            |
| * can be blank               |                       |
| Apply                        |                       |

Figure 66: Common Configuration Items

| Item                      | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|---------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Two-Factor Authentication | To enable the two-factor authentication service, choose the service type you want to use from <i>Google Authenticator</i> or <i>OATH Toolkit</i> . For more details refer to Chapter 5.2.1 <i>Two-Factor Authentication</i> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| Mode                      | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Local user database</b> – Authenticate against the local user database only. See Chapter 5.1 <i>Manage Users</i>.</li> <li>• <b>RADIUS with fallback</b> – Authenticate against the RADIUS server first, and then against the local database if the RADIUS server is not accessible.</li> <li>• <b>RADIUS only</b> – Authenticate only against the RADIUS server. <b>Note that you will not be able to authenticate to the router if the RADIUS server is not accessible!</b></li> <li>• <b>TACACS+ with fallback</b> – Authenticate against the TACACS+ server first, and then against the local database if the TACACS+ server is not accessible.</li> <li>• <b>TACACS+ only</b> – Authenticate only against the TACACS+ server. <b>Note that you will not be able to authenticate to the router if the TACACS+ server is not accessible!</b></li> </ul> |
| Lock Account After        | Number of failed login attempts after which the account will be locked.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |

Continued on the next page

Continued from previous page

| Item                      | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|---------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Count Fails For           | The time window for which unsuccessful login attempts will be counted.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| Unlock After              | The time after which logging will be unlocked if it was previously locked.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| Force Password Complexity | Specify the level of password complexity: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>very weak</b> – Not secure and not recommended. Requires 6 characters. Time to crack: Seconds to minutes.</li> <li>• <b>weak</b> – Not secure and not recommended. Requires 8 characters from two sets (numbers, letters) [NIST SP 800-63B compliant]. Time to crack: Hours to days.</li> <li>• <b>good</b> – Reasonably secure. Requires 12 characters from three sets (uppercase letters, lowercase letters, and numbers), with a maximum of 3 same characters in sequence [FirstNet compliant]. Time to crack: Months to years.</li> <li>• <b>strong</b> – For the best security level. Requires 16 characters from four sets (uppercase and lowercase letters, digits, and special characters). Time to crack: Centuries.</li> </ul> |
| Expire Password After     | Number of days after which the password will expire and the user will be prompted to change it; see Chapter <a href="#">5.2.3 Forced Password Change</a> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| Delay After Fail          | The time after which the login screen will appear again in case of a previous unsuccessful attempt.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| Debug                     | Enable or disable debugging in the Syslog.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |

Table 50: Enter Caption

## RADIUS Mode



When authenticate against the RADIUS server, user with the same name must exist locally. It can be created manually (see Chapter [5.1 Manage Users](#)) or can be created automatically based on data from RADIUS server, if the *Take Over Server Users* option is enabled as described hereunder.

To configure the authentication against a RADIUS server, choose *RADIUS with fallback* or *RADIUS only* as the *PAM mode* and set up all required items, see Figure 67. Table 51 describes all the configuration options for the RADIUS PAM modes.

| Authentication Configuration         |             |        |        |           |
|--------------------------------------|-------------|--------|--------|-----------|
| Two-Factor Authentication            | disabled    |        |        |           |
| Mode                                 | RADIUS only |        |        |           |
| RADIUS Server(s)                     |             |        |        |           |
|                                      | Server      | Port * | Secret | Timeout * |
| <input type="checkbox"/>             |             |        |        | sec       |
| <input type="checkbox"/>             |             |        |        | sec       |
| Take Over Server Users               | disabled    |        |        |           |
| Default User Role                    | admin       |        |        |           |
| Delay After Fail *                   | 1           |        |        | sec       |
| Debug                                | disabled    |        |        |           |
| * can be blank                       |             |        |        |           |
| <input type="button" value="Apply"/> |             |        |        |           |

Figure 67: Configuration of RADIUS

| Item                   | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Server                 | Address of the RADIUS server. Up to two servers can be configured.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| Port                   | Port of the RADIUS server.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| Secret                 | The secret For authentication to the RADIUS server.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| Timeout                | Timeout for authentication to the RADIUS server.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| Take Over Server Users | If enabled, a new user account is created during the login, in case the RADIUS authentication is successful and appropriate local account does not exist. New accounts are created without the password. An existing user account with a password is never modified by this feature.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| Default User Role      | Choose the user role ( <i>Admin</i> or <i>User</i> ). This role corresponds with router's user roles, see Chapter <a href="#">5.1 Manage Users</a> .<br>Selected role will be used for a user in case the option <i>Take Over Server Users</i> is enabled and if the user's <i>Service-Type</i> set on the RADIUS server is missing or is not set up to <i>NAS-Prompt-User</i> or <i>Administrative-User</i> .<br>When <i>Service-Type</i> is set to <i>NAS-Prompt-User</i> , the <i>User</i> role will be used.<br>When <i>Service-Type</i> is set to <i>Administrative-User</i> , the <i>Admin</i> role is used. |

Table 51: Configuration of RADIUS

## TACACS+ Mode



When authenticate against the TACACS+ server, user with the same name must exist locally. It can be created manually (see Chapter [5.1 Manage Users](#)) or can be created automatically based on data from TACACS+ server, if the *Take Over Server Users* option is enabled as described hereunder.

To configure the authentication against a TACACS+ server, choose *TACACS+ with fallback* or *TACACS+ only* as the *PAM mode* and set up all required items, see Figure 68. Table 52 describes all the configuration options for the TACACS PAM modes.

**Authentication Configuration**

Two-Factor Authentication: disabled

Mode: TACACS+ only

TACACS+ Server(s)

Authentication Type: ASCII

Timeout \*:  sec

|                          | Server        | Port *        | Secret        |
|--------------------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> | <span></span> | <span></span> | <span></span> |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | <span></span> | <span></span> | <span></span> |

Take Over Server Users: disabled

Default User Role: admin

Delay After Fail \*: 1 sec

Debug: disabled

\* can be blank

Apply

Figure 68: Configuration of TACACS+

| Item                   | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Authentication Type    | Choose ASCII, PAP or CHAP as authentication type. To configure the two-factor authentication for a user, see Chapter <a href="#">5.2.1 Two-Factor Authentication</a> .                                                                                                                |
| Timeout                | Timeout for authentication to the TACACS+ server.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| Server                 | Address of the TACACS+ server. Up to two servers can be configured.                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| Port                   | Port of the TACACS+ server.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| Secret                 | The secret For authentication to the TACACS+ server.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| Take Over Server Users | If enabled, a new user account is created during the login, in case the TACACS+ authentication is successful and appropriate local account does not exist. New accounts are created without the password. An existing user account with a password is never modified by this feature. |
| Default User Role      | Choose the user role ( <i>Admin</i> or <i>User</i> ). This role corresponds with router's user roles, see Chapter <a href="#">5.1 Manage Users</a> .<br>Selected role will be used for a new user when <i>Take Over Server Users</i> is used.                                         |

Table 52: Configuration of TACACS+

### 3.17.2 DynDNS

The DynDNS function allows you to access the router remotely using an easy-to-remember custom host-name. This DynDNS client monitors the router's IP address and updates it whenever a change occurs. For DynDNS to function, a public IP address, either static or dynamic, is required, along with an active Remote Access service account on a Dynamic DNS server. Register the custom (third-level) domain and account information specified in the configuration form.

Other services can also be used, see the table below under the *Server* item. To open the *DynDNS Configuration* page, click *DynDNS* in the main menu.

| Item     | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|----------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Hostname | The third-level domain registered on a Dynamic DNS server.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| Username | Username for logging into the DynDNS server.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| Password | Password for logging into the DynDNS server. Enter only valid characters (see Chapter 1.2.1).                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| IP Mode  | Specifies the IP protocol version: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>IPv4</b> – Only the IPv4 protocol is used (default).</li> <li>• <b>IPv6</b> – Only the IPv6 protocol is used.</li> <li>• <b>IPv4/IPv6</b> – Dual stack mode (IPv4 and IPv6) is enabled.</li> </ul>                                                                                                           |
| Server   | Specifies a DynDNS service. Some available free services include: <a href="http://www.freedns.afraid.org">www.freedns.afraid.org</a> , <a href="http://www.duckdns.org">www.duckdns.org</a> , <a href="http://www.noip.com">www.noip.com</a> . Enter the update server's service information in this field. If left blank, the default server <code>members.dyndns.org</code> will be used. |

Table 53: DynDNS Configuration Items Description

Example of a DynDNS client configuration with the domain *company.dyndns.org*:

Figure 69: DynDNS Configuration Example



To access the router's configuration remotely, ensure that this option is enabled in the NAT configuration (bottom part of the form). See Chapter 3.10 NAT.

### 3.17.3 FTP



FTP is an unencrypted protocol.

FTP protocol (File Transfer Protocol) can be used to transfer files between the router and another device on the computer network. Configuration form of TP server can be done in *FTP* configuration page under *Services* menu item.

| Item               | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|--------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Enable FTP service | Enabling of FTP server.                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| Maximum Sessions   | Indicates how many concurrent connections shall the FTP server accept. Once the maximum is reached, additional connections will be rejected until some of the existing connections are terminated. The range is from 1 to 500. |
| Session Timeout    | Is used to close inactive sessions. The server will terminate a FTP session after it has not been used for the given amount of seconds. The range is from 60 to 7200.                                                          |

Table 54: Parameters for FTP service configuration

**FTP Configuration**

☐ Enable FTP service

Maximum Sessions

Session Timeout  sec

Figure 70: Configuration of FTP server

### 3.17.4 HTTP

HTTP protocol (Hypertext Transfer Protocol) is internet protocol used for exchange of hypertext documents in HTML format. This protocol is used for accessing the web server used for user's configuration of the router. Recommended usage however is of HTTPS protocol, which used encryption for secure exchange of transferred data. Configuration form of HTTP and HTTPS service can be done in *HTTP* configuration page under *Services* menu item. By default, HTTP service is disabled and preferred is using of HTTPS service. For this default setting, a request for communication with HTTP protocol is redirected to HTTPS protocol automatically.

| Item                         | Description                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Enable HTTP service          | Enabling of HTTP service.                                                                                                                                                                         |
| Enable HTTPS service         | Enabling of HTTPS service.                                                                                                                                                                        |
| Minimum TLS Version          | If specified, the router will disable TLS versions lower than the specified minimum. For better security choose the highest version of TLS protocol, unless you need to use an older web browser. |
| Session Timeout              | Inactivity timeout when the session is closed.                                                                                                                                                    |
| Login Banner                 | The text specified in this field will be displayed on the login page just above the credentials fields.                                                                                           |
| Keep the current certificate | Left the current one certificate in the router.                                                                                                                                                   |
| Generate a new certificate   | Generate a new self-signed certificate to the router.                                                                                                                                             |
| Upload a new certificate     | Upload custom PEM certificate, which can be signed by Certificate Authority.                                                                                                                      |
| Certificate                  | Choose a file with the PEM certificate.                                                                                                                                                           |
| Private Key                  | Choose a file with the certificate private key.                                                                                                                                                   |

Table 55: Parameters for HTTP and HTTPS services configuration

HTTP Configuration

☐ Enable HTTP service  
☒ Enable HTTPS service

Minimum TLS Version

TLS 1.2

Session Timeout

6000

sec

Login Banner

☒ Keep the current certificate  
☐ Generate a new certificate  
☐ Upload a new certificate

Certificate

Procházet...

Soubor nevybrán.

Private Key

Procházet...

Soubor nevybrán.

Apply

Figure 71: Configuration of HTTP and HTTPS services

### 3.17.5 NTP

The *NTP* configuration form allows you to configure the NTP client. To open the *NTP* page, click *NTP* in the *Configuration* section of the main menu. NTP (Network Time Protocol) allows you to periodically set the internal clock of the router. The time is set from servers that provide the exact time to network devices. IPv6 Time Servers are supported.

- If you mark the *Enable local NTP service* check box, then the router acts as a NTP server for other devices in the local network (LAN).
- If you mark the *Synchronize clock with NTP server* check box, then the router acts as a NTP client. This means that the router automatically adjusts the internal clock every 24 hours.

| Item                         | Description                                                                                                                                                                        |
|------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Primary NTP Server Address   | IPv4 address, IPv6 address or domain name of primary NTP server.                                                                                                                   |
| Secondary NTP Server Address | IPv4 address, IPv6 address or domain name of secondary NTP server.                                                                                                                 |
| Timezone                     | Specifies the time zone where you installed the router.                                                                                                                            |
| Daylight Saving Time         | Activates/deactivates the DST shift. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>No</b> – The time shift is inactive.</li> <li>• <b>Yes</b> – The time shift is active.</li> </ul> |

Table 56: NTP Configuration

The figure below displays an example of a NTP configuration with the primary server set to `ntp.cesnet.cz` and the secondary server set to `tik.cesnet.cz` and with the automatic change for daylight saving time enabled.

NTP Configuration

☐ Enable local NTP service

☒ Synchronize clock with NTP server

Primary NTP Server

Secondary NTP Server

Timezone  ▼

Daylight Saving Time  ▼

Figure 72: Example of NTP Configuration

### 3.17.6 SNMP

The *SNMP* page allows you to configure the SNMP v1/v2 or v3 agent which sends information about the router (and about its expansion ports eventually) to a management station. To open the *SNMP* page, click *SNMP* in the *Configuration* section of the main menu. SNMP (Simple Network Management Protocol) provides status information about the network elements such as routers or endpoint computers. In the version v3, the communication is secured (encrypted). To enable the SNMP service, mark the *Enable the SNMP agent* check box. Sending SNMP traps to IPv6 address is supported.

| Item     | Description                                                                               |
|----------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Name     | Designation of the router.                                                                |
| Location | Location of where you installed the router.                                               |
| Contact  | Person who manages the router together with information how to contact this person.       |
| Custom   | You can use this input field to enter specific information tailored to your requirements. |

Table 57: SNMP Agent Configuration

To enable the SNMPv1/v2 function, mark the *Enable SNMPv1/v2 access* check box. It is also necessary to specify a password for access to the *Community* SNMP agent. The default setting is *public*.

You can define a different password for the *Read* community (read only) and the *Write* community (read and write) for SNMPv1/v2. You can also define 2 SNMP users for SNMPv3. You can define a user as read only (*Read*), and another as read and write (*Write*). The router allows you to configure the parameters in the following table for every user separately. The router uses the parameters for SNMP access only.

To enable the SNMPv3 function, mark the *Enable SNMPv3 access* check box, then specify the following parameters:

| Item                    | Description                                                                                              |
|-------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Username                | User name                                                                                                |
| Authentication          | Encryption algorithm on the Authentication Protocol that is used to verify the identity of the users.    |
| Authentication Password | Password used to generate the key used for authentication. Enter valid characters only, see chap. 1.2.1! |
| Privacy                 | Encryption algorithm on the Privacy Protocol that is used to ensure confidentiality of data.             |
| Privacy Password        | Password for encryption on the Privacy Protocol. Enter valid characters only, see chap. 1.2.1!           |

Table 58: SNMPv3 Configuration

Activating the *Enable I/O extension* function allows you monitor the binary I/O inputs on the router.



Selecting *Enable M-BUS extension* and entering the *Baudrate*, *Parity* and *Stop Bits* lets you monitor the meter status connected via MBUS interface. MBUS expansion port is not currently supported, but it is possible to use an external RS232/MBUS converter.

Each monitored value is uniquely identified using a numerical identifier *OID* – *Object Identifier*. This identifier consists of a progression of numbers separated by a point. The shape of each OID is determined by the identifier value of the parent element and then this value is complemented by a point and current number. So it is obvious that there is a tree structure. The following figure displays the basic tree structure that is used for creating the OIDs.

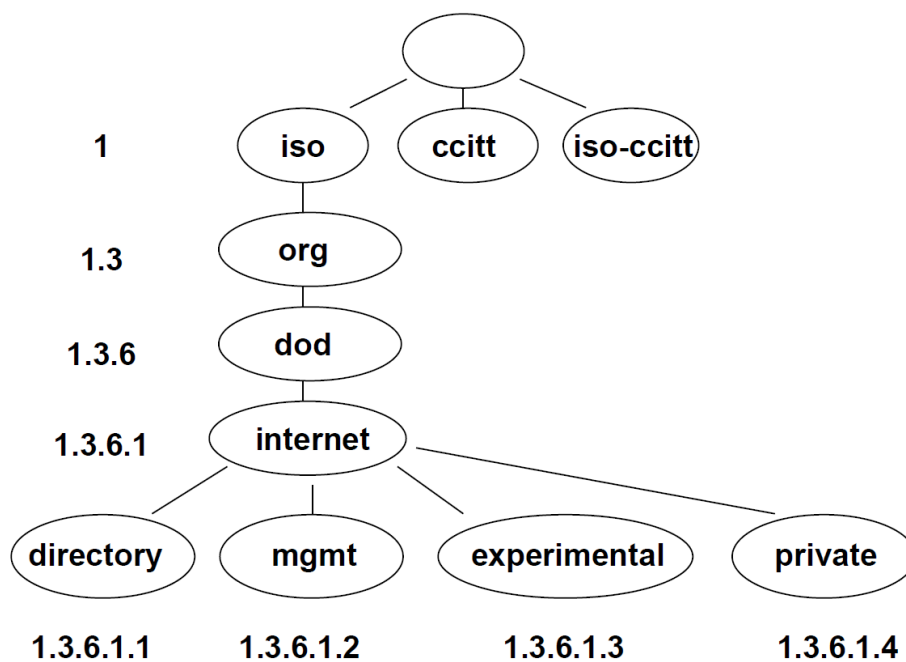


Figure 73: OID Basic Structure

The SNMP values that are specific for Advantech routers create the tree starting at OID = .1.3.6.1.4.1.30140. You interpret the OID in the following manner:

**iso.org.dod.internet.private.enterprises.conel**

This means that the router provides for example, information about the internal temperature (OID 1.3.6.1.4.1.30140.3.3) or about the power voltage (OID 1.3.6.1.4.1.30140.3.4). For binary inputs and output, the following range of OID is used:

| OID                        | Description                     |
|----------------------------|---------------------------------|
| .1.3.6.1.4.1.30140.2.3.1.0 | Binary input BIN0 (values 0,1)  |
| .1.3.6.1.4.1.30140.2.3.2.0 | Binary output OUT0 (values 0,1) |
| .1.3.6.1.4.1.30140.2.3.3.0 | Binary input BIN1 (values 0,1)  |

Table 59: Object identifier for binary inputs and output



The list of available and supported OIDs and other details can be found in the application note *SNMP Object Identifiers* [11].

| SNMP Configuration                                              |                                                       |                                               |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable SNMP agent           |                                                       |                                               |
| Name *                                                          | <input type="text" value="Company"/>                  |                                               |
| Location *                                                      | <input type="text" value="City, Street ##"/>          |                                               |
| Contact *                                                       | <input type="text" value="Jack Roghul +420 732 123"/> |                                               |
| Custom *                                                        | <input type="text"/>                                  |                                               |
| <i>(Configuration via SNMP is not possible.)</i>                |                                                       |                                               |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable SNMPv1/v2 access     |                                                       |                                               |
| Community                                                       | Read<br><input type="text" value="public"/>           | Write<br><input type="text" value="private"/> |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Enable SNMPv3 access                   |                                                       |                                               |
| Username                                                        | Read<br><input type="text"/>                          | Write<br><input type="text"/>                 |
| Authentication                                                  | MD5 ▼                                                 | MD5 ▼                                         |
| Authentication Password                                         | <input type="text" value=""/>                         | <input type="text" value=""/>                 |
| Privacy                                                         | DES ▼                                                 | DES ▼                                         |
| Privacy Password                                                | <input type="text" value=""/>                         | <input type="text" value=""/>                 |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Enable I/O extension                   |                                                       |                                               |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Enable XC-CNT extension                |                                                       |                                               |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Enable M-BUS extension                 |                                                       |                                               |
| Baudrate                                                        | 300 ▼                                                 |                                               |
| Parity                                                          | even ▼                                                |                                               |
| Stop Bits                                                       | 1 ▼                                                   |                                               |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Enable reporting to supervisory system |                                                       |                                               |
| IP Address                                                      | <input type="text"/>                                  |                                               |
| Period                                                          | <input type="text"/>                                  | min                                           |
| * can be blank                                                  |                                                       |                                               |
| <input type="button" value="Apply"/>                            |                                                       |                                               |

Figure 74: SNMP Configuration Example

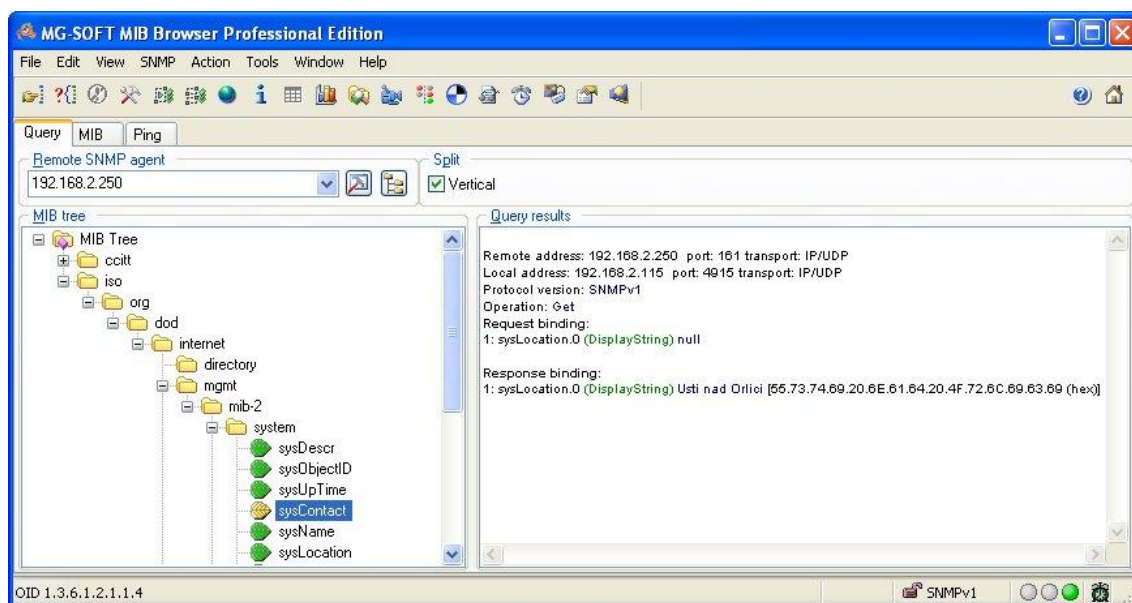


Figure 75: MIB Browser Example

In order to access a particular device enter the IP address of the SNMP agent which is the router, in the *Remote SNMP agent* field. The dialog displayed the internal variables in the MIB tree after entering the IP address. Furthermore, you can find the status of the internal variables by entering their OID.

The path to the objects is:

iso → org → dod → internet → private → enterprises → Conel → protocols

The path to information about the router is:

iso → org → dod → internet → mgmt → mib-2 → system

### 3.17.7 SMTP

Use the *SMTP* form to configure the Simple Mail Transfer Protocol client (SMTP) for sending e-mails. IPv6 e-mail servers are supported.

| Item                | Description                                                                       |
|---------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| SMTP Server Address | IPv4 address, IPv6 address or domain name of the mail server.                     |
| SMTP Port           | Port the SMTP server is listening on.                                             |
| Secure Method       | none, SSL/TLS, or STARTTLS. Secure method has to be supported by the SMTP server. |
| Username            | Name for the e-mail account.                                                      |
| Password            | Password for the e-mail account. Enter valid characters only, see chap. 1.2.1!    |
| Own E-mail Address  | Address of the sender.                                                            |

Table 60: SMTP client configuration



The mobile service provider can block other SMTP servers, then you can only use the SMTP server of the service provider.

SMTP Configuration

|                                                                                         |                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| SMTP Server Address                                                                     | <input style="width: 90%;" type="text" value="smtp.domain.com"/>                                                                                                                                      |
| SMTP Port                                                                               | <input style="width: 90%;" type="text" value="465"/>                                                                                                                                                  |
| Secure Method                                                                           | <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px; display: flex; align-items: center;">SSL/TLS<span style="font-size: 0.8em;">▼</span></div>                                                          |
| Username                                                                                | <input style="width: 90%;" type="text" value="username"/>                                                                                                                                             |
| Password                                                                                | <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px; display: flex; align-items: center;"> <span style="flex-grow: 1;">••••••••</span> <span style="font-size: 0.8em; margin-left: 5px;">👁</span> </div> |
| Own Email Address                                                                       | <input style="width: 90%;" type="text" value="name@domain.com"/>                                                                                                                                      |
| <input style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px 15px;" type="button" value="Apply"/> |                                                                                                                                                                                                       |

Figure 76: SMTP Client Configuration Example

You can send emails from the startup script. The *Startup Script* dialog is located in *Scripts* in the *Configuration* section of the main menu.

The router also allows you to send emails using an SSH connection. Use the `email` command, see *Command Line Interface* [1] Application Note for details.

### 3.17.8 SMS

Open the *SMS* page in the *Services* submenu of the *Configuration* section of the main menu. The router can automatically send SMS messages to a cell phone or SMS message server when certain events occur. The format allows you to select which events generate an SMS message.

| Item                                                    | Description                                                                                                                |
|---------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Send SMS on power up                                    | Activates/deactivates the sending of an SMS message automatically on power up.                                             |
| Send SMS on connect to mobile network                   | Activates/deactivates the sending of an SMS message automatically when the router is connected to a mobile network.        |
| Send SMS on disconnect to mobile network                | Activates/deactivates the sending of an SMS message automatically when the router is disconnection from a mobile network.  |
| Send SMS when datalimit exceeded                        | Activates/deactivates the sending of an SMS message automatically when the data limit exceeded.                            |
| Send SMS when binary input on I/O port (BIN0) is active | Automatic sending SMS message after binary input on I/O port (BIN0) is active. Text of message is intended parameter BIN0. |
| Add timestamp to SMS                                    | Activates/deactivates the adding a time stamp to the SMS messages. This time stamp has a fixed format YYYY-MM-DD hh:mm:ss. |
| Phone Number 1                                          | Specifies the phone number to which the router sends the generated SMS.                                                    |
| Phone Number 2                                          | Specifies the phone number to which the router sends the generated SMS.                                                    |
| Phone Number 3                                          | Specifies the phone number to which the router sends the generated SMS.                                                    |
| Unit ID                                                 | The name of the router. The router sends the name in the SMS.                                                              |
| BIN0 – SMS                                              | Text of the SMS message when the first binary input is activated.                                                          |
| BIN1 – SMS                                              | Text of the SMS message when the second binary input is activated.                                                         |

Table 61: SMS Configuration

## Remote Control via SMS

After you enter a phone number in the *Phone Number 1* field, the router allows you to configure the control of the device using an SMS message. You can configure up to three numbers for incoming SMS messages. To enable the function, mark the *Enable remote control via SMS* check box. The default setting of the remote control function is active.

| Item           | Description                                                                  |
|----------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Phone Number 1 | Specifies the first phone number allowed to access the router using an SMS.  |
| Phone Number 2 | Specifies the second phone number allowed to access the router using an SMS. |
| Phone Number 3 | Specifies the third phone number allowed to access the router using an SMS.  |

Table 62: Control via SMS



If you enter one or more phone numbers, then you can control the router using SMS messages sent only from the specified phone numbers.

If you enter the wild card character \*, then you can control the router using SMS messages sent from any phone number.

Most of the control SMS messages do not change the router configuration. For example, if the router is changed to the off line mode using an SMS message, the router remains in this mode, but it will return back to the on-line mode after reboot. The only exception is *set profile* command that changes the configuration permanently, see the table below.

To control the router using an SMS, send only message text containing the control command. You can send control SMS messages in the following format:

| SMS              | Description                                              |
|------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|
| go online sim 1  | Switch the mobile WAN to the SIM1.                       |
| go online sim 2  | Switch the mobile WAN to the SIM2.                       |
| go online        | Switch the router to the online mode.                    |
| go offline       | Switch the router to the off line mode.                  |
| set out0=0       | Set the binary output to 0.                              |
| set out0=1       | Set the binary output to 1.                              |
| set profile std  | Set the standard profile. This change is permanent.      |
| set profile alt1 | Set the alternative profile 1. This change is permanent. |
| set profile alt2 | Set the alternative profile 2. This change is permanent. |
| set profile alt3 | Set the alternative profile 3. This change is permanent. |
| reboot           | Reboot the router.                                       |
| get ip           | Respond with the IP address of the SIM card.             |

Table 63: Control SMS



**Note:** Every received control SMS is processed and then **deleted** from the router! This may cause a confusion when you want to use AT-SMS protocol for reading received SMS (see section below).



**Advanced SMS control:** If there is unknown command in received SMS and remote control via SMS is enabled, the script located in "/var/scripts/sms" is run before the SMS is deleted. It is possible to define your own additional SMS commands using this script. Maximum of 7 words can be used in such SMS. Since the script file is located in RAM of the router, it is possible to add creation of such file to Startup Script. See example in *Commands and Scripts* Application Note [1].

### AT-SMS Protocol



AT-SMS protocol is a private set of AT commands supported by the routers. It can be used to access the cellular module in the router directly via commonly used AT commands, work with short messages (send SMS) and cellular module state information and settings.

Choosing *Enable AT-SMS protocol on expansion port 1* and *Baudrate* makes it possible to use AT-SMS protocol on the serial Port 1.

| Item     | Description                                 |
|----------|---------------------------------------------|
| Baudrate | Communication speed on the expansion port 1 |

Table 64: Send SMS on the serial Port 1

Choosing *Enable AT-SMS protocol on expansion port 2* and *Baudrate* makes it possible to use AT-SMS protocol on the serial Port 2.

| Item     | Description                                 |
|----------|---------------------------------------------|
| Baudrate | Communication speed on the expansion port 2 |

Table 65: Send SMS on the serial Port 2

Setting the parameters in the *Enable AT-SMS protocol over TCP* frame, you can enable the router to use AT-SMS protocol on a TCP port. This function requires you to specify a TCP port number.

| Item     | Description                                                     |
|----------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|
| TCP Port | TCP port on which will be allowed to send/receive SMS messages. |

Table 66: Sending/receiving of SMS on TCP port specified

If you establish a connection to the router through a serial interface or interface using the TCP protocol, then you can use AT commands to manage SMS messages.

Only the commands supported by the routers are listed in the following table. For other AT commands the OK response is always sent. There is no support for treatment of complex AT commands, so in such a case the router sends ERROR response.

| AT Command | Description                                                               |
|------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| AT+CGMI    | Returns the manufacturer specific identity                                |
| AT+CGMM    | Returns the manufacturer specific model identity                          |
| AT+CGMR    | Returns the manufacturer specific model revision identity                 |
| AT+CGPADDR | Displays the IP address of the Mobile WAN interface                       |
| AT+CGSN    | Returns the product serial number                                         |
| AT+CIMI    | Returns the International Mobile Subscriber Identity number (IMSI)        |
| AT+CMGD    | Deletes a message from the location                                       |
| AT+CMGF    | Sets the presentation format of short messages                            |
| AT+CMGL    | Lists messages of a certain status from a message storage area            |
| AT+CMGR    | Reads a message from a message storage area                               |
| AT+CMGS    | Sends a short message from the device to entered tel. number              |
| AT+CMGW    | Writes a short message to SIM storage                                     |
| AT+CMSS    | Sends a message from SIM storage location value                           |
| AT+CNUM    | Returns the phone number, if available (stored on SIM card)               |
| AT+COPS?   | Identifies the available mobile networks                                  |
| AT+CPIN    | Is used to find out the SIM card state and enter a PIN code               |
| AT+CPMS    | Selects SMS memory storage types, to be used for short message operations |
| AT+CREG    | Displays network registration status                                      |
| AT+CSCA    | Sets the short message service centre (SMSC) number                       |
| AT+CSCS    | Selects the character set                                                 |
| AT+CSQ     | Returns the signal strength of the registered network                     |
| AT+GMI     | Returns the manufacturer specific identity                                |
| AT+GMM     | Returns the manufacturer specific model identity                          |
| AT+GMR     | Returns the manufacturer specific model revision identity                 |
| AT+GSN     | Returns the product serial number                                         |
| ATE        | Determines whether or not the device echoes characters                    |

Continued on next page

Continued from previous page

| AT Command | Description                                                      |
|------------|------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ATI        | Transmits the manufacturer specific information about the device |

Table 67: List of AT Commands



A detailed description and examples of these AT commands can be found in the application note *AT Commands (AT-SMS)* [12].

### **Sending SMS from Router**

There are more ways how to send your own SMS from the router:

- Using AT-SMS protocol described above – if you establish a connection to the router through a serial interface or interface using the TCP protocol, then you can use AT commands to manage SMS messages. See application note *AT Commands (AT-SMS)* [12].
- Using HTTP POST method for a remote execution, calling CGI scripts in the router. See *Commands and Scripts Application Note* [1] for more details and example.
- From Web interface of the router, in *Administration* section, *Send SMS* item, see Chapter 5.8.
- Using `gsmsms` command e.g. in terminal when connected to the router via SSH. See *Commands and Scripts Application Note* [1].

## Examples of SMS Configuration

### Example 1 Sending SMS Configuration

After powering up the router, the phone with the number entered in the dialog receives an SMS in the following format:

*Router (Unit ID) has been powered up. Signal strength -xx dBm.*

After connecting to mobile network, the phone with the number entered in the dialog receives an SMS in the following format:

*Router (Unit ID) has established connection to mobile network. IP address xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx*

After disconnecting from the mobile network, the phone with the number entered in the dialog receives an SMS in the following format:

*Router (Unit ID) has lost connection to mobile network. IP address xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx*

| SMS Configuration                    |                                                                      |
|--------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>  | Send SMS on power up                                                 |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>  | Send SMS on connect to mobile network                                |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>  | Send SMS on disconnect from mobile network                           |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>  | Send SMS when datalimit is exceeded                                  |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>  | Send SMS when binary input on I/O port (BIN0) is active              |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>  | Send SMS when binary input on expansion port 1 (BIN1-BIN4) is active |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>  | Add timestamp to SMS                                                 |
| Phone Number 1                       | <input type="text" value="723123456"/>                               |
| Phone Number 2                       | <input type="text" value="756858635"/>                               |
| Phone Number 3                       | <input type="text" value="603854758"/>                               |
| Unit ID *                            | <input type="text" value="Router"/>                                  |
| BIN0 - SMS *                         | <input type="text" value="BIN0"/>                                    |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>  | Enable remote control via SMS                                        |
| Phone Number 1                       | <input type="text"/>                                                 |
| Phone Number 2                       | <input type="text"/>                                                 |
| Phone Number 3                       | <input type="text"/>                                                 |
| <input type="checkbox"/>             | Enable AT-SMS protocol on expansion port 1                           |
| Baudrate                             | <input type="text" value="9600"/>                                    |
| <input type="checkbox"/>             | Enable AT-SMS protocol on expansion port 2                           |
| Baudrate                             | <input type="text" value="9600"/>                                    |
| <input type="checkbox"/>             | Enable AT-SMS protocol over TCP                                      |
| TCP Port                             | <input type="text"/>                                                 |
| * can be blank                       |                                                                      |
| <input type="button" value="Apply"/> |                                                                      |

Figure 77: SMS Configuration for Example 1

**Example 2** Sending SMS via Serial Interface on the Port 1

| SMS Configuration                    |                                                                      |
|--------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <input type="checkbox"/>             | Send SMS on power up                                                 |
| <input type="checkbox"/>             | Send SMS on connect to mobile network                                |
| <input type="checkbox"/>             | Send SMS on disconnect from mobile network                           |
| <input type="checkbox"/>             | Send SMS when datalimit is exceeded                                  |
| <input type="checkbox"/>             | Send SMS when binary input on I/O port (BIN0) is active              |
| <input type="checkbox"/>             | Send SMS when binary input on expansion port 1 (BIN1-BIN4) is active |
| <input type="checkbox"/>             | Add timestamp to SMS                                                 |
| Phone Number 1                       | <input type="text"/>                                                 |
| Phone Number 2                       | <input type="text"/>                                                 |
| Phone Number 3                       | <input type="text"/>                                                 |
| Unit ID *                            | <input type="text"/>                                                 |
| BIN0 - SMS *                         | <input type="text"/>                                                 |
| <input type="checkbox"/>             | Enable remote control via SMS                                        |
| Phone Number 1                       | <input type="text"/>                                                 |
| Phone Number 2                       | <input type="text"/>                                                 |
| Phone Number 3                       | <input type="text"/>                                                 |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>  | Enable AT-SMS protocol on expansion port 1                           |
| Baudrate                             | <input type="text" value="9600"/>                                    |
| <input type="checkbox"/>             | Enable AT-SMS protocol on expansion port 2                           |
| Baudrate                             | <input type="text" value="9600"/>                                    |
| <input type="checkbox"/>             | Enable AT-SMS protocol over TCP                                      |
| TCP Port                             | <input type="text"/>                                                 |
| * can be blank                       |                                                                      |
| <input type="button" value="Apply"/> |                                                                      |

Figure 78: SMS Configuration for Example 2

**Example 3** Control the Router Sending SMS from any Phone Number

| SMS Configuration                    |                                                         |
|--------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------|
| <input type="checkbox"/>             | Send SMS on power up                                    |
| <input type="checkbox"/>             | Send SMS on connect to mobile network                   |
| <input type="checkbox"/>             | Send SMS on disconnect from mobile network              |
| <input type="checkbox"/>             | Send SMS when datalimit is exceeded                     |
| <input type="checkbox"/>             | Send SMS when binary input on I/O port (BIN0) is active |
| <input type="checkbox"/>             | Add timestamp to SMS                                    |
| Phone Number 1                       | <input type="text"/>                                    |
| Phone Number 2                       | <input type="text"/>                                    |
| Phone Number 3                       | <input type="text"/>                                    |
| Unit ID *                            | <input type="text"/>                                    |
| BIN0 - SMS *                         | <input type="text"/>                                    |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>  | Enable remote control via SMS                           |
| Phone Number 1                       | <input type="text" value="*"/>                          |
| Phone Number 2                       | <input type="text"/>                                    |
| Phone Number 3                       | <input type="text"/>                                    |
| <input type="checkbox"/>             | Enable AT-SMS protocol on expansion port 1              |
| Baudrate                             | <input type="text" value="9600"/>                       |
| <input type="checkbox"/>             | Enable AT-SMS protocol on expansion port 2              |
| Baudrate                             | <input type="text" value="9600"/>                       |
| <input type="checkbox"/>             | Enable AT-SMS protocol over TCP                         |
| TCP Port                             | <input type="text"/>                                    |
| * can be blank                       |                                                         |
| <input type="button" value="Apply"/> |                                                         |

Figure 79: SMS Configuration for Example 3

**Example 4** Control the Router Sending SMS from Two Phone Numbers

| SMS Configuration                    |                                                                      |
|--------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <input type="checkbox"/>             | Send SMS on power up                                                 |
| <input type="checkbox"/>             | Send SMS on connect to mobile network                                |
| <input type="checkbox"/>             | Send SMS on disconnect from mobile network                           |
| <input type="checkbox"/>             | Send SMS when datalimit is exceeded                                  |
| <input type="checkbox"/>             | Send SMS when binary input on I/O port (BIN0) is active              |
| <input type="checkbox"/>             | Send SMS when binary input on expansion port 1 (BIN1-BIN4) is active |
| <input type="checkbox"/>             | Add timestamp to SMS                                                 |
| <input type="checkbox"/>             | Enable remote control via SMS                                        |
| Phone Number 1                       | <input type="text"/>                                                 |
| Phone Number 2                       | <input type="text"/>                                                 |
| Phone Number 3                       | <input type="text"/>                                                 |
| Unit ID *                            | <input type="text"/>                                                 |
| BIN0 - SMS *                         | <input type="text"/>                                                 |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>  | Enable remote control via SMS                                        |
| Phone Number 1                       | <input type="text" value="728123456"/>                               |
| Phone Number 2                       | <input type="text" value="766254864"/>                               |
| Phone Number 3                       | <input type="text"/>                                                 |
| <input type="checkbox"/>             | Enable AT-SMS protocol on expansion port 1                           |
| Baudrate                             | <input type="text" value="9600"/>                                    |
| <input type="checkbox"/>             | Enable AT-SMS protocol on expansion port 2                           |
| Baudrate                             | <input type="text" value="9600"/>                                    |
| <input type="checkbox"/>             | Enable AT-SMS protocol over TCP                                      |
| TCP Port                             | <input type="text"/>                                                 |
| * can be blank                       |                                                                      |
| <input type="button" value="Apply"/> |                                                                      |

Figure 80: SMS Configuration for Example 4

### 3.17.9 SSH

SSH protocol (Secure Shell) allows to carry out a secure remote login to the router. Configuration form of SSH service can be done in *SSH* configuration page under *Services* menu item. By ticking *Enable SSH service* item the SSH server on the router is enabled.

| Item                     | Description                                                                                                                              |
|--------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Enable SSH service       | Enabling of SSH service.                                                                                                                 |
| Port                     | Listening port.                                                                                                                          |
| Session Timeout          | Inactivity timeout when the session is closed. The maximum allowed value may vary based on security requirements for the specific model. |
| Login Banner             | The text specified in this field will be displayed in the console during the SSH login just after the login name entry.                  |
| Keep the current SSH key | Choose to keep current key.                                                                                                              |
| Generate a new SSH key   | Choose to generate new key.                                                                                                              |
| Key Length               | Choose the key length to be generated. The minimum allowed value may vary based on security requirements for the specific model.         |

Table 68: Parameters for SSH service configuration

### SSH Configuration

☒ Enable SSH service

Port

22

Session Timeout

600

sec

Login Banner

☒ Keep the current SSH key  
☐ Generate a new SSH key

Key Length

2048

▼

Apply

Figure 81: Configuration of HTTP service

### 3.17.10 Syslog

Configuration of the system log, known as *syslog*, is accessible from this configuration page. To view this log, navigate to the router's GUI via *Status* → *System Log*. Remember, you can enable auto-refreshing of this page by clicking the *refresh* button in the top-right corner. You can also access the syslog through the console with the `show log` command.

| Item             | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Log Size Limit   | Limits the maximum log size by the maximum size in KiB. The default size is 1000 KiB.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| Minimum Severity | Defines the minimum log severity level, ranging from <i>Emergency</i> to <i>Debug</i> . The <i>Debug</i> level offers detailed logs useful for troubleshooting but should be used only when necessary.<br>Note: Some configuration pages (e.g., WiFi, IPsec, Authentication) or Router Apps may include separate logging level settings. |
| Remote Host      | Specifies the hostname or IP address of the remote host for real-time syslog forwarding.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| Remote Port      | Defines the port used for forwarding.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| Device ID        | A unique identifier for remote logging. If left blank, the default identifier <i>Router</i> is used.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |

Table 69: Syslog configuration

| Syslog Configuration                 |                                              |
|--------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|
| Log Size Limit                       | <input type="text" value="1000"/> KiB        |
| Minimum Severity                     | <input type="text" value="Informational"/> ▼ |
| Remote Host                          | <input type="text"/>                         |
| Remote UDP Port                      | <input type="text" value="514"/>             |
| Device ID *                          | <input type="text"/>                         |
| * can be blank                       |                                              |
| <input type="button" value="Apply"/> |                                              |

Figure 82: Syslog configuration

### 3.17.11 Telnet



Telnet is an unencrypted protocol.

Telnet is a protocol used to provide a bidirectional interactive text-oriented communication facility with the router. Configuration form of Telnet service can be done in *Telnet* configuration page under *Services* menu item.

| Item                  | Description                                                                                                                                                            |
|-----------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Enable Telnet service | Enabling of Telnet service.                                                                                                                                            |
| Maximum Sessions      | Is used to close inactive sessions. The server will terminate a Telnet session after it has not been used for the given amount of seconds. The range is from 1 to 500. |

Table 70: Parameters for Telnet service configuration

| Telnet Configuration                 |                                 |
|--------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>  | Enable Telnet service           |
| Maximum Sessions                     | <input type="text" value="50"/> |
| <input type="button" value="Apply"/> |                                 |

Figure 83: Configuration of Telnet service

### 3.18 Expansion Ports – RS232 & RS485

Configuration of the RS232 and RS485 interfaces can be done via *Expansion Port 1* resp. *Expansion Port 2* menu items.

At the top of the configuration window, the port can be activated, and the connected port's type is displayed under the *Port Type* item. Additional settings are outlined in the table below. Support for IPv6 TCP/UDP client/server configurations is available.

| Expansion Port 1 Configuration                                                  |          |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable expansion port 1 access over TCP/UDP |          |
| Port Type                                                                       | RS-232   |
| Baudrate                                                                        | 9600     |
| Data Bits                                                                       | 8        |
| Parity                                                                          | none     |
| Stop Bits                                                                       | 1        |
| Flow Control                                                                    | none     |
| Split Timeout                                                                   | 20 msec  |
| Protocol                                                                        | TCP      |
| Mode                                                                            | server   |
| Server Address                                                                  |          |
| TCP Port                                                                        |          |
| Inactivity Timeout *                                                            | sec      |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Reject new connections                                 |          |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Check TCP connection                                   |          |
| Keepalive Time                                                                  | 3600 sec |
| Keepalive Interval                                                              | 10 sec   |
| Keepalive Probes                                                                | 5        |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Use CD as indicator of TCP connection                  |          |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Use DTR as control of TCP connection                   |          |
| * can be blank                                                                  |          |
| <input type="button" value="Apply"/>                                            |          |

Figure 84: Expansion Port Configuration

| Item               | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|--------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Baudrate           | Applied communication speed: <b>300, 600, 1200, 2400, 4800, 9600</b> (default), <b>19200, 38400, 57600, 115200</b> .                                                                                                                                                      |
| Data Bits          | Number of data bits: <b>5, 6, 7, 8</b> (default).                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| Parity             | Control parity bit: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>none</b> – data will be sent without parity.</li> <li>• <b>even</b> – data will be sent with even parity.</li> <li>• <b>odd</b> – data will be sent with odd parity.</li> </ul>                           |
| Stop Bits          | Number of stop bits: <b>1</b> (default), <b>2</b> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Flow Control       | Set the flow control to <b>none</b> or <b>hardware</b> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| Split Timeout      | Time to rupture reports. If the gap between two characters exceeds the parameter in milliseconds, any buffered characters will be sent over the Ethernet port.                                                                                                            |
| Protocol           | Protocol: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>TCP</b> – communication using a linked protocol TCP.</li> <li>• <b>UDP</b> – communication using a unlinked protocol UDP.</li> </ul>                                                                                |
| Mode               | Mode of connection: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>TCP server</b> – The router will listen for incoming TCP connection requests.</li> <li>• <b>TCP client</b> – The router will connect to a TCP server on the specified IP address and TCP port.</li> </ul> |
| Server Address     | When set to <i>TCP client</i> above, it is necessary to enter the <i>Server address</i> and <i>TCP port</i> . IPv4 and IPv6 addresses are allowed.                                                                                                                        |
| TCP Port           | TCP/UDP port used for communications. The router uses the value for both the server and client modes.                                                                                                                                                                     |
| Inactivity Timeout | Time period after which the TCP/UDP connection is interrupted in case of inactivity.                                                                                                                                                                                      |

Table 71: Expansion Port Configuration – serial interface

If you mark the *Reject new connections* check box, then the router rejects any other connection attempt. This means that the router no longer supports multiple connections.

If you mark the *Check TCP connection* check box, the router verifies the TCP connection.

| Item               | Description                                          |
|--------------------|------------------------------------------------------|
| Keepalive Time     | Time after which the router verifies the connection. |
| Keepalive Interval | Length of time that the router waits on an answer.   |
| Keepalive Probes   | Number of tests that the router performs.            |

Table 72: Expansion Port Configuration – *Check TCP connection*

The changes in settings will apply after pressing the *Apply* button.

### 3.18.1 Examples of the Expansion Port Configuration

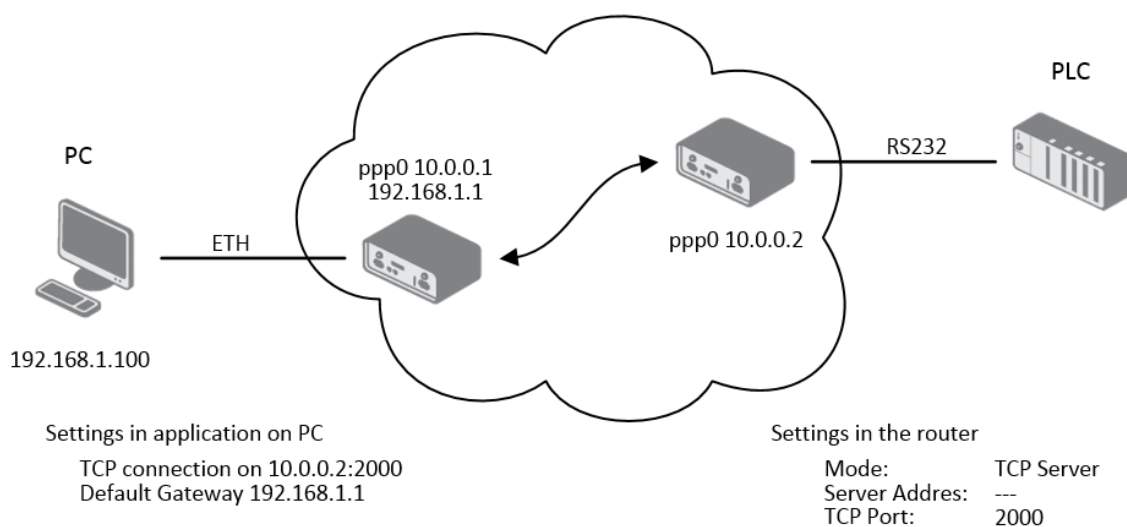


Figure 85: Example of Ethernet to serial communication configuration

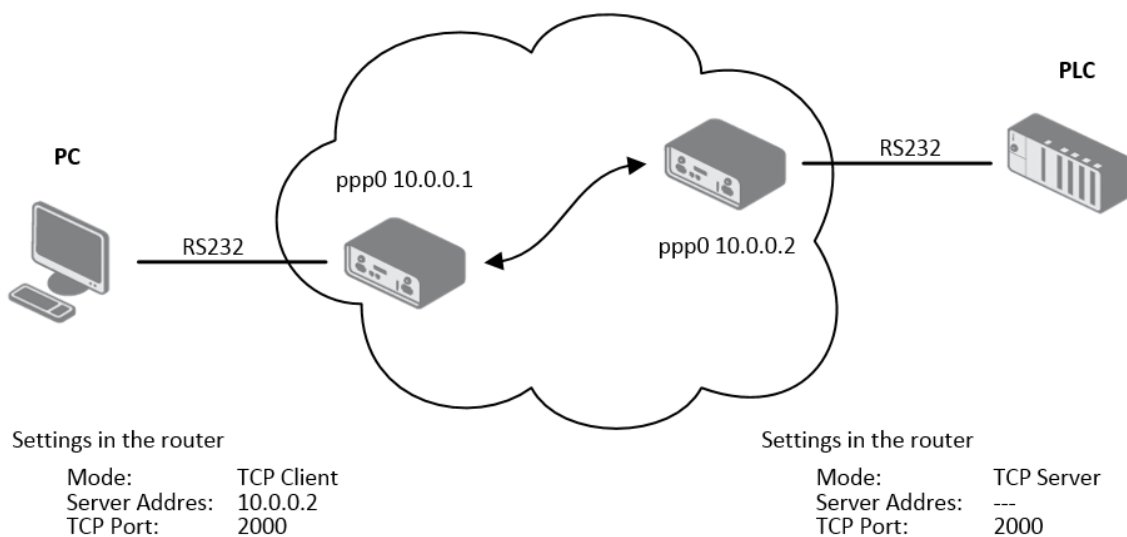


Figure 86: Example of serial interface configuration

## 3.19 Scripts

- **Startup Script:** Executed once every time the router powers on or after a factory reset. Ideal for initial setup, configuration checks, or launching background monitoring processes.
- **Up/Down IPv4 Scripts:** Contains fields for an "Up" script (executed when the primary WAN IPv4 connection is established) and a "Down" script (executed when the primary WAN IPv4 connection is lost). These scripts receive connection-specific parameters (like interface name, IP address).
- **Up/Down IPv6 Scripts:** Similar to IPv4 scripts, but triggered by the establishment ("Up") or loss ("Down") of the primary WAN IPv6 connection, receiving relevant IPv6 parameters.

For more details, see the following subchapters. For console configuration commands, refer to the [Command Line Interface](#) Application Note. For more information on enhancing the router's basic functionality, refer to the [Extending Router Functionality](#) Application Note.

### 3.19.1 Startup Script

Use the *Startup Script* window to create your own scripts which will be executed after all of the initialization scripts are run – right after the router is turned on or rebooted. To save the script press the *Apply* button.



Any changes made to a startup script will take effect next time the router is power cycled or rebooted. This can be done with the *Reboot* button in the *Administration* section, or by SMS message.

### 3.19.2 Example of Startup Script

Below is a syntax example for defining a simple script directly in the GUI (e.g., Startup Script). This script executes its commands once when the corresponding event occurs.



```
#!/bin/sh

# Define variables
PhoneNumber="+420123456789"
Message="Router event triggered SMS."

# Use the variables
sms "$PhoneNumber" "$Message"

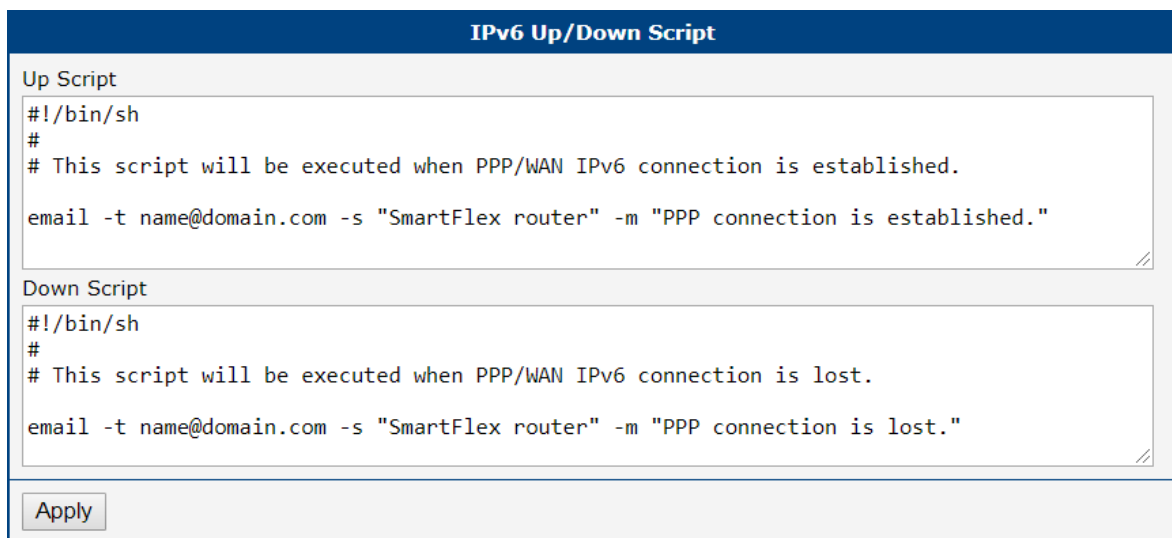
exit 0
```

### 3.19.3 Up/Down Scripts

Use the *Up/Down IPv4* and *Up/Down IPv6* page to create scripts executed when the WAN connection is established (up) or lost (down). There is an independent IPv4 and IPv6 dual-stack implemented in the router, so there is independent IPv4 and IPv6 Up/Down script. *IPv4 Up/Down Script* runs only on the IPv4 WAN connection established/lost, *IPv6 Up/Down Script* runs only on the IPv6 WAN connection established/lost. Any scripts entered into the *Up Script* window will run after a WAN connection is established. Script commands entered into the *Down Script* window will run when the WAN connection is lost.

The changes in settings will apply after pressing the *Apply* button. Also you need to reboot the router to make Up/Down Script work.

### 3.19.4 Example of IPv6 Up/Down Script



**IPv6 Up/Down Script**

Up Script

```
#!/bin/sh
#
# This script will be executed when PPP/WAN IPv6 connection is established.
email -t name@domain.com -s "SmartFlex router" -m "PPP connection is established."
```

Down Script

```
#!/bin/sh
#
# This script will be executed when PPP/WAN IPv6 connection is lost.
email -t name@domain.com -s "SmartFlex router" -m "PPP connection is lost."
```

Apply

Figure 87: Example of IPv6 Up/Down Script

After establishing or losing an IPv6 WAN connection, the router sends an email with information about the connection state. It is necessary to configure *SMTP* before.

Add this line to the *Up Script* field:

```
email -t name@domain.com -s "Router" -m "Connection up."
```

Add this line to the *Down Script* field:

```
email -t name@domain.com -s "Router" -m "Connection down."
```

3.20 Automatic Update

The router can be configured to automatically check for firmware updates from an FTP site or a web server and update its firmware or configuration information; see Figure 88 and Table 73.

Automatic Update

☐ Enable automatic update of configuration

☐ Enable automatic update of firmware

Base URL

Unit ID \*

Decryption Password \*

Update Window Start

dynamic

Update Window Length \*min

Skip Certificate Verification☒

Use Custom CA Certificate☐

CA Certificate \*

Choose File

\* can be blank

Apply

Figure 88: Automatic Update

| Item                                     | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Enable automatic update of configuration | If enabled and if there is a new configuration file, it will update it and reboot.                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| Enable automatic update of firmware      | If enabled and if there is a new firmware, it will update it and reboot.                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| Base URL                                 | Base URL, IPv4, or IPv6 address from which the configuration file will be downloaded. This option also specifies the communication protocol (HTTP, HTTPS, FTP, or FTPS), see examples below.                                                                            |
| Unit ID                                  | Name of configuration (name of the file without extension). If the <i>Unit ID</i> is not filled, the MAC address of the router is used as the filename (the delimiter colon is used instead of a dot).                                                                  |
| Decryption Password                      | Password for decryption of the encrypted configuration file. This is required only if the configuration is encrypted.                                                                                                                                                   |
| Update Window Start                      | Choose an hour (range from 1 to 24) when the automatic update will be performed on a daily basis.<br>If the time is not specified (set to <i>dynamic</i> ), the automatic update is performed five minutes after the router boots up and then regularly every 24 hours. |

Continued on the next page

Continued from previous page

| Item                          | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|-------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Update Window Length          | This value defines the period within which the update will be done. This period starts at the time set in the <i>Update Window Start</i> field. The exact time, when the update will be done, is generated randomly. |
| Skip Certificate Verification | If enabled, the server certificate validation is not executed.                                                                                                                                                       |
| Use Custom CA Certificate     | If enabled, the server certificate validation is executed to verify server identity.                                                                                                                                 |
| CA Certificate                | CA certificate to validate on the server.                                                                                                                                                                            |

Table 73: Automatic Update Options

To prevent possible unwanted manipulation of the files, the router verifies that the downloaded file is in the `tar.gz` format. First, the format of the downloaded file is checked. Then, the type of architecture and each file in the archive (`tar.gz` file) is checked.

The **configuration file** name consists of the *Base URL*, the hardware MAC address of the ETH0 interface, and the `cfg` extension. The hardware MAC address and `cfg` extension are added to the file name automatically, so it is not necessary to enter them. When the parameter *Unit ID* is enabled, it defines the specific configuration name that will be downloaded to the router, and the hardware MAC address in the configuration name will not be used.

The **firmware file** name consists of the *Base URL*, the type of router, and the `bin` extension. For the proper firmware filename, see the *Update Firmware* page in the *Administration* section; it is written there, see Chapter 5.11.

- It is necessary to load two files (`*.bin` and `*.ver`) to the server. If only the `*.bin` file is uploaded and the HTTP(S) server sends an incorrect `200 OK` response (instead of the expected `404 Not Found`) when the device tries to download the nonexistent `*.ver` file, the router may download the `.bin` file repeatedly.
- Firmware update can cause incompatibility with the router apps. It is recommended that you update router apps to the most recent version. Information about the router apps and firmware compatibility is provided at the beginning of the router app's Application Note.
- The automatic update feature is also executed five minutes after the firmware upgrade, regardless of the scheduled time.

### 3.20.1 Example of Automatic Update

In the following example, the router is configured to check for new firmware or a configuration file daily at 1:00 a.m. This scenario is specifically tailored for the SmartFlex router.

- Firmware file: `https://example.com/SPECTRE-v3-LTE.bin`
- Configuration file: `https://example.com/test.cfg`

**Automatic Update**

☒ Enable automatic update of configuration

☒ Enable automatic update of firmware

Base URL

Unit ID \*

Decryption Password \*

Update Window Start  ▼

Update Window Length \*  min

Skip Certificate Verification ☒

Use Custom CA Certificate ☐

CA Certificate \*

\* can be blank

Figure 89: Example of Automatic Update 1

### 3.20.2 Example of Automatic Update Based on MAC

The example provided demonstrates how to check for new firmware or configurations daily between 1:00 a.m. and 3:00 a.m. The configuration file is encrypted, necessitating the setup of a decryption password. This specific example is applicable to the SmartFlex router with the MAC address 00:11:22:33:44:55.

- Firmware file: <https://example.com/SPECTRE-v3-LTE.bin>
- Configuration file: <https://example.com/00.11.22.33.44.55.cfg>

**Automatic Update**

☒ Enable automatic update of configuration

☒ Enable automatic update of firmware

Base URL

Unit ID \*

Decryption Password \*

Update Window Start

Update Window Length \*  min

Skip Certificate Verification ☒

Use Custom CA Certificate ☐

CA Certificate \*

\* can be blank

Figure 90: Example of Automatic Update 2

## 4. Customization

### 4.1 Router Apps



A user with the *User* role can only view the installed Router Apps. Management of Router Apps is allowed only for users with the *Admin* role.

Router Apps (RA), formerly known as *User Modules*, enhance router functionality through custom software programs. These apps extend the router's capabilities in areas such as security and advanced networking, offering a flexible and customizable experience.

For Advantech routers, a diverse array of Router Apps is offered, encompassing categories such as connectivity, routing, services, among others. These applications are freely accessible on the Advantech [Router Apps](#) webpage, providing users with a wide range of options to enhance the functionality of their devices.

Figure 91 illustrates the default layout of the *Router Apps* configuration interface. The initial segment, titled *Installed Apps*, presents a comprehensive list of Router Apps currently installed on the device. The subsequent section, *Manual Installation*, provides the functionality for manually adding Router Apps to the system. The *Free Space* row indicates the available space. Lastly, the third section facilitates the online acquisition and installation of Router Apps accessible from a public server.

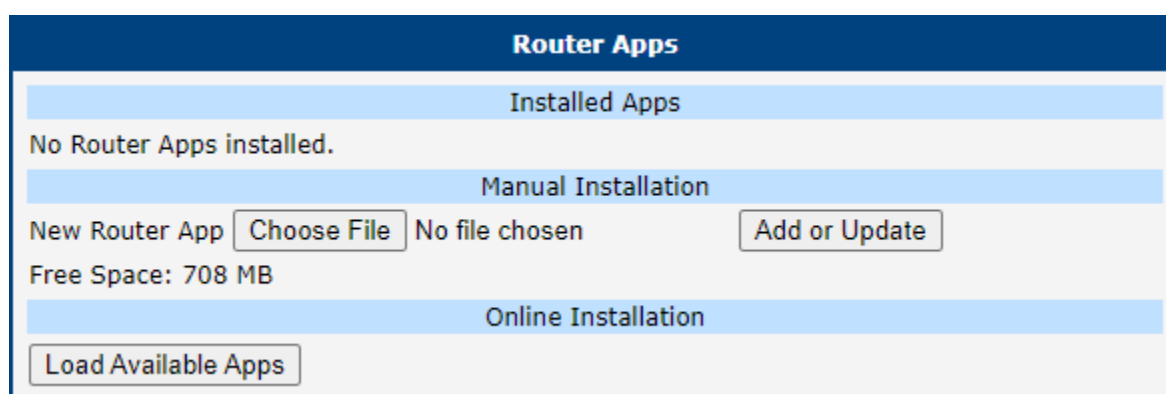


Figure 91: Default Router Apps GUI

#### Manual RA Installation and Update

For the manual installation of a RA, prepare the application package with a `*.tgz` extension. In the router interface, use the *Choose File* button to select your file and the *Add or Update* button to start the installation.

#### Online RA Installation and Update

To install Router Apps from the public server, it is imperative to first ensure that the router is correctly configured and connected as outlined in Chapter 4.2. By default, routers are set to automatically connect to the public Advantech server. To proceed with the installation, click on the *Load Available Apps* button, which initiates the loading of a comprehensive list of RA that are available on the server for installation.

Keep these notes in mind:

- The online RA installation functionality starts with firmware version 1.4.5.
- Note that an Internet connection is required to access the public server. Without it, you will encounter an error: "Cannot get auth header: Couldn't resolve host name".

- The list of online applications is updated only when the *Reload Available Apps* button is pressed. The last loading timestamp is visible next to this button.
- If the router is rebooted, the list of applications is cleared and needs to be reloaded.
- The *Load Available Apps* button is deactivated if the connection to the server is disabled.

Figure 92 displays an instance where the assortment of online applications accessible for installation has been successfully loaded. This figure further demonstrates that only the *Customer Logo* application, version v1.0.0, is installed on the local device, as indicated by its solitary listing in the *Installed Apps* section.

Within the *Online Installation* section, it is highlighted that an updated version of the *Customer Logo* application, version v1.1.0, is available for download from the server, showcasing the potential for upgrading existing applications directly through the router's interface.

The screenshot shows the 'Router Apps' interface. It is divided into three main sections: 'Installed Apps', 'Manual Installation', and 'Online Installation'.

- Installed Apps:** Shows 'Customer Logo v1.0.0 (2020-01-31)' with a 'Delete' button.
- Manual Installation:** Includes a 'New Router App' section with a 'Choose File' button (showing 'No file chosen') and an 'Add or Update' button. Below it, 'Free Space: 708 MB' is displayed.
- Online Installation:** Features a 'Reload Available Apps' button and a timestamp 'Last check 2024-01-15 10:39:55'. Below this is a list of available apps:
 

| App Name             | Version      | Action  | Description                                                                                                            |
|----------------------|--------------|---------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 802.1X Authenticator | 1.1.0        | Install | 802.1X network authentication standard for devices on LAN/WLAN.                                                        |
| Azure IoT SDK Python | 1.0.0        | Install | Add Microsoft Azure IoT Hub Device SDK for Python to router [Obsolete version].                                        |
| Customer Logo        | v1.0.0 1.1.0 | Install | Allow users to change the logo displayed in the header of the web interface                                            |
| Unique Password      | 1.0.2        | Install | unique. From January 2020, this is required by California Senate Bill No. 327. The format used is 'Ph'                 |
| WebAccess/VPN Client | 1.1.3        | Install | This user module allows the router to be part of WebAccess/VPN.                                                        |
| WiFi STA Relay       | 1.3.0        | Install | Set the router to transparent mode (WiFi interface in client mode bridged to ETH). [Limited to specific router models] |
| Zabbix Agent         | 5.0.3-1      | Install | Agent for Zabbix network monitoring platform.                                                                          |

Figure 92: Router Apps GUI with Available Online Apps

### RA Management

Installed Router Apps, regardless of whether they were installed manually or from the server, appear in the *Installed Apps* section.

Apps with an `index.html` or `index.cgi` page have a clickable link in their name. Clicking on this link opens the GUI of the respective application.

To remove an app, click the *Delete* button, which is located next to the respective application in the *Installed Apps* section.



The programming and compiling of router applications is described in the Application Note *Programming of Router Apps* [14].

4.2 Settings

To configure the connection settings for the online application hosting server, navigate to the *Customization* → *Settings* menu option. Figure 93 and Table 74 offer comprehensive details regarding the configuration parameters for the server, ensuring users can effectively customize their router to connect to the online application hosting server.

Router Apps Settings

☐ Disable server communication

☒ Use public server

☐ Use custom server

API URL

CA certificate \*

Choose File

No file chosen

\* can be blank

Apply

Figure 93: Router Apps Settings

| Item                         | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Disable server communication | Connection to the server is disabled, preventing any data exchange with the online application hosting server.                                                                                                                                                                               |
| Use public server            | Opt to utilize the public server, managed by Advantech, as the primary source for Router Apps. This is the default configuration. An active internet connection is mandatory for accessing the server.                                                                                       |
| Use custom server            | Select this option to establish a connection with a self-hosted server that adheres to the Advantech specifications for Router Apps. <b>Operating your own self-hosted server is feasible exclusively with an on-premises installation of the <i>WebAccess/DMP</i> product by Advantech.</b> |
| API URL                      | Enter the URL for the self-hosted server, ensuring the inclusion of the 'https://' prefix to denote a secure connection.                                                                                                                                                                     |
| CA certificate               | Provide the certificate for the self-hosted server, especially if it utilizes a Certificate Authority (CA) that is not widely recognized or standard.                                                                                                                                        |

Table 74: Router Apps Settings

# 5. Administration

## 5.1 Manage Users



Be careful not to lock out all users with the *Admin* role. If this happens, no user will have the rights to configure user accounts.



- This configuration menu is available only to users with the *Admin* role.
- For user authentication settings, such as two-factor authentication and account locking rules, refer to Chapter 3.17.1.
- See Chapter 5.2.3 *Forced Password Change* for situations where the user will be prompted to change their password.

To manage users, open the *Manage Users* form in the *Administration* section of the main menu, as shown in Figure 94. In this figure, you can see that there are two users defined on the router: `root` with the *Admin* role, and the user `Alice` with the *User* role. By clicking the *Add User* button, the user `John` (whose data is filled in the form) will be added to the router.

Manage Users

|       |       |      |        |        |
|-------|-------|------|--------|--------|
| root  | Admin | Lock | Modify |        |
| Alice | User  | Lock | Modify | Delete |

Role

Admin

Username

John

New Password

.....

• Must be at least 6 characters long  
• Must not be palindrome  
• Must not contain username

Confirm Password

.....

SSH Public Key \*

ssh-rsa  
AAAAB3NzaC1yc2EAAAADAQABAAQCMNgYZU504EkVocFQZJJDbmUWe4WbcCIe3  
aXaEtz1Ez30c0/iNTJSNZt10QcY8RmX09nUew0G9H/kC+vP3Px0jRdQAAnJMVtmT  
lVsdJNe5hzkI7oMfBcVDMn3aAcx1T8PQp7YyIPSMURHDTEFa3tUCpGna/QbtXAa3  
97vKRAw765uLiC7ENwBH0axsX6v4xUlqF3Awz7ImUw+PVEe09zjpkpJ3YzJzdzIz

Load From File...

Phone Number \*

+15551234567

Email Address \*

address@email.com

Add User

Figure 94: Modify User Page

The first part of this configuration form contains a list of all existing users. Table 75 describes the meaning of the buttons located to the right of each user.

| Button | Description                                                                                                       |
|--------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Lock   | Locks the user account. This user is not allowed to log in to the router, either to the web interface or via SSH. |
| Modify | Allows you to change the password or key for the corresponding user, see Chapter 5.2.                             |
| Delete | Deletes the user account.                                                                                         |

Table 75: Action Button Description

The second part of the configuration form allows adding a new user. All items are described in Table 76. To create a new user, configure all required items and click the *Add User* button.

| Item             | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Role             | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>User</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ User with <b>basic permissions</b>.</li> <li>○ Read-only access to the web GUI, except for <i>Modify User</i>.</li> <li>○ Some menu items are hidden in the web GUI.</li> <li>○ Read-only access to the <i>Router Apps</i> GUI.</li> <li>○ No access to the router via Telnet, SSH or SFTP.</li> <li>○ Read-only access to the FTP server.</li> </ul> </li> <li>• <b>Admin</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ User with <b>enhanced permissions</b>.</li> <li>○ Full access to all items in the web GUI.</li> <li>○ Access to the router via Telnet, SSH or SFTP.</li> <li>○ Not the same rights as the superuser on a Linux-based system.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> |
| Username         | Specifies the name of the user having access to log in to the device.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| New Password     | Specifies the password for the user. It must match the rules stated in the GUI, which depend on the <i>Force Password Complexity</i> level set in <i>Configuration → Services → Authentication</i> , as described in Chapter 3.17.1.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| Confirm Password | Confirms the password.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| Public key       | Enter the SSH Public Key to enable passwordless SSH login. Refer to Chapter 5.2.2 for details.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| Phone Number     | User's phone number. If configured, an SMS is sent to the user when their password is changed. A functional SIM card is required.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| Email Address    | User's email address. If configured, an email is sent to the user when their password is changed. SMTP must be configured.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| Add User         | Click this button to create a new user based on the entries in the fields above.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |

Table 76: User Parameters

## 5.2 Modify User



- This configuration menu is only available for users with the *User* role. Such users can only modify their own account.
- To view the current user authentication configuration settings, such as two-factor authentication and account locking rules, refer to Chapter 3.17.1

If a user with a *User* role is logged in, they can manage only their user account. This can be done on the *Administration* → *Modify User* page. You will get the same configuration page if you have the *Admin* role when modifying another user account on the *Manage Users* page.

Figure 95: Users Administration Form

The meaning of the items in the first part of this window is clear or described in more detail in Chapter 5.1. If you want to change your own password, you will need to enter the current password as well. In the second part, you can configure two-factor authentication for a user, including its secret key.

### 5.2.1 Two-Factor Authentication



If the configuration of two-factor authentication fails or does not complete properly, you will be unable to log in to the router using that user account. It is recommended to set up a backup account to log in to the router in case issues arise during the configuration process. You can delete this backup account after successfully configuring two-factor authentication.



To successfully log in using two-factor authentication, the correct system time must be set on the router. Therefore, it is strongly recommended to enable the *Synchronize clock with remote NTP server* option. For more details, refer to Chapter 3.17.5 NTP.

If you have enabled one of the two-factor authentication services, as mentioned above, you should see the chosen service name in the *Two-Factor Auth* field, as shown in Figure 95.

A secret key is required to activate the two-factor authentication. You can generate this key by choosing the *Generate a new secret key* option. You can upload the user's secret key from a file using *Upload a new secret key*. Clicking the *Apply* button the secret key will be saved. Next, click the *Show* button, located to the right of the secret key, the secret key will be shown.



Without the secret key, a user will not be able to finish two-factor configuration and log in to the router.



A user with the *Admin* role cannot generate or upload the secret key for another user; they can only delete the key.

#### Implementation Notes

- Two different two-factor implementations are supported:
  - [Google Authenticator](#),
  - [OATH Toolkit](#).
- Implemented for the following services only:
  - the router's web server login,
  - SSH login,
  - TELNET login.
- Two-factor authentication is disabled by default.
- Two-factor authentication data are backed up/restored during user backup/restore.
- All private two-factor authentication data are removed when the corresponding user is deleted.
- No internet or mobile connection is required to use two-factor authentication, but keep in mind the need to synchronize the system time.

#### Configuration Steps

1. Enable the two-factor authentication service as described in Chapter 3.17.1.
2. Enable the two-factor authentication for a user as described in Chapter 5.2.
3. Use an application or service to perform the two-factor authentication to the router as described in following [Authenticator](#) Chapter.

## Authenticator

To log in with two-factor authentication, you need an Authenticator application. Both *Google Authenticator* and *OATH* use TOTP (Time-based One-Time Password, [RFC 6238](#)) mode by default. You can use any compatible authenticator. For information about authenticator usage, see the corresponding manual.

You can use the [Google Authenticator](#) application; see Figure 96 for the download links.

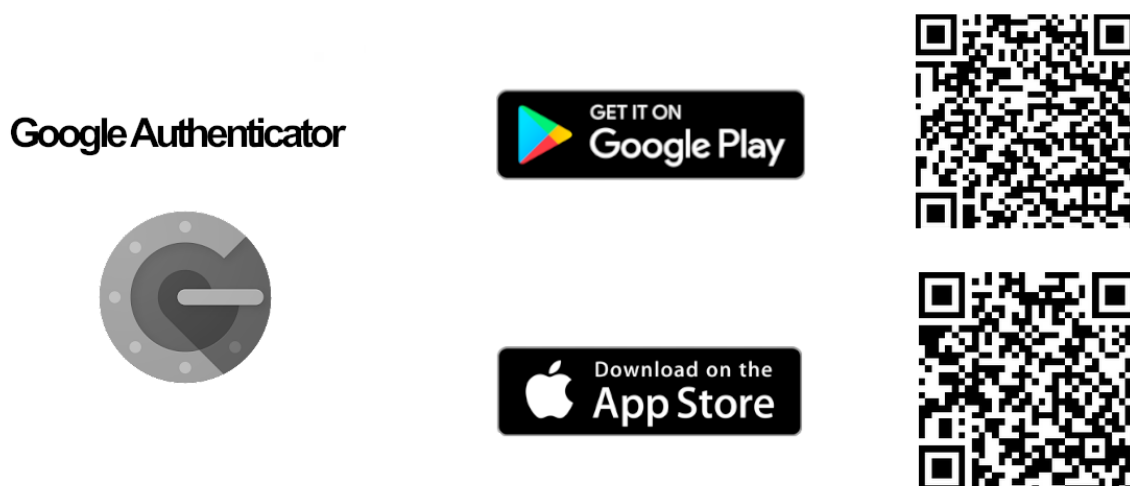


Figure 96: Links for Google Authenticator Application

[Authenticator-Extension](#) is available as an extension for all popular browsers; see Figure 97 for the download links.

## Authenticator-Extension / Authenticator



Figure 97: Links for Authenticator-Extension

In an Authenticator application, you can create a new entry by entering the secret key you have noted down or by scanning the QR code shown for the user on the *Modify User* configuration page.

## Router Web Login

When logging into the router's web interface, enter the *Username* and *Password* as you would for a standard login; see Figure 98.

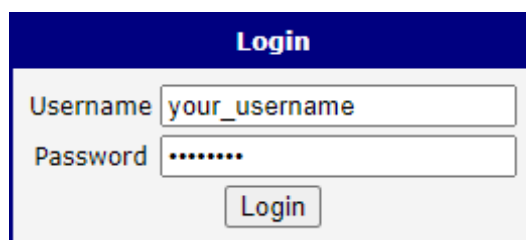
A web form titled "Login" with a blue header. It contains two input fields: "Username" with the placeholder text "your\_username" and "Password" with masked characters ".....". Below the fields is a "Login" button.

Figure 98: Standard Login

Next, you will be prompted to enter the Verification Code; see Figure 99. This code is obtained from your Authenticator. Note that there is a **limited time** for code usage, typically within five minutes, assuming the system time is correct.

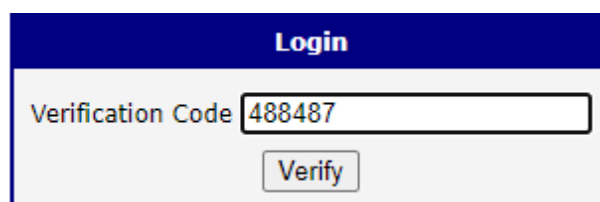
A web form titled "Login" with a blue header. It contains one input field labeled "Verification Code" with the value "488487". Below the field is a "Verify" button.

Figure 99: Verification Code

After entering the correct code, you will be successfully logged in to the router's web interface.

## SSH and Telnet Login

Logging into SSH and Telnet with two-factor authentication is similar. Enter your username, password, and the generated verification code. For an example of SSH login, see Figure 100.

```
login as: your_username
Using keyboard-interactive authentication.
Password:
Using keyboard-interactive authentication.
Verification code:
$ █
```

Figure 100: SSH Login

### 5.2.2 Passwordless Console Login

You can log in to SSH without a password using an SSH Public Key. This chapter demonstrates the key generation and connection process using *PuTTY*, a free terminal emulator for Windows OS available at [PuTTY](#).

#### Installation Notes

- For simplicity, this guide details a manual installation of PuTTY to the directory `C:\bin`, instead of using an `.msi` installation package.
- From the PuTTY application [download page](#), locate the *Alternative binary files* section and download `putty.exe`, `puttygen.exe`, and `pageant.exe`. The 64-bit x86 version is generally recommended. This guide uses *PuTTY* version 0.80. Save these files to the `C:\bin` directory.

#### Generate Keys

- Run the downloaded `puttygen.exe` application to create your SSH key, as shown in Figure 101.
- Ensure the *RSA* option is selected.
- Click the *Generate* button. Move your mouse randomly within the window to generate the keys.
- Once complete, the key data will appear in the window.

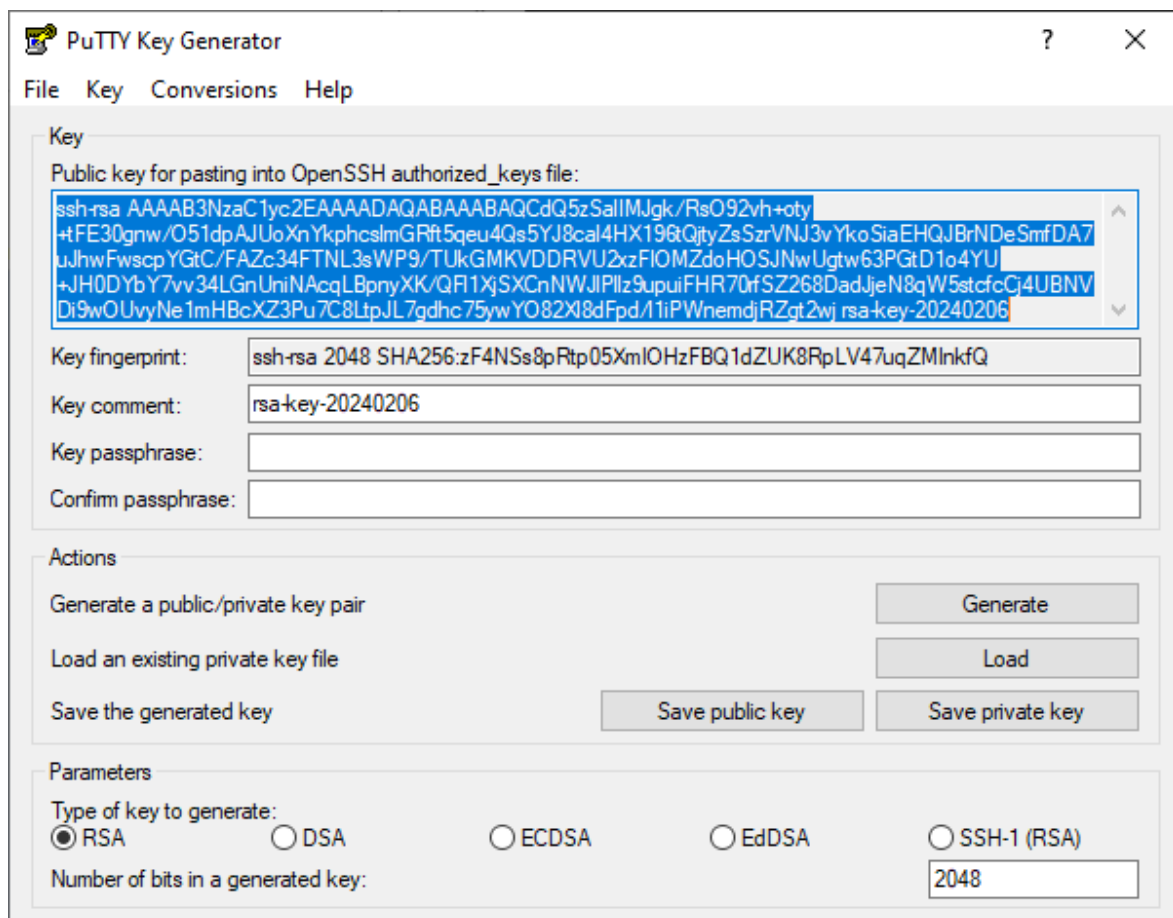


Figure 101: Key Generation

- Click both *Save public key* and *Save private key* buttons to save these keys on your computer:
  - Name the public key *hostpublickey* and the private key *hostprivatekey*. **Do not** manually add any file extensions.
  - If prompted about a passphrase, click *Yes* to save without a passphrase. Using a passphrase adds security, but this guide proceeds without one for simplicity.
- Leave the *PuTTY Key Generator* application open.

### Uploading Public Key to the Router

- In the router GUI (*Administration* → *Manage Users*), click the *Modify* button for the user to whom you want to add the public key. Ensure the user has the *Admin* role; SSH login is not permitted for users with the *User* role.
- Enter the generated public key for the user:
  - In the *PuTTY Key Generator*, select the entire public key (the data within the text box) and copy it to the clipboard.
  - In the router GUI, paste the key into the *SSH Public Key* field.
  - It is important that the key **starts with "ssh-rsa "** followed by the key itself. If the key is not properly recognized, the SSH login will fail.
- Save the user settings by clicking the *Apply* button.
- You can now close the *PuTTY Key Generator* application.



If you have a public key generated previously and want to copy it to the router, the easiest way is to open the key file in the *PuTTY Key Generator* application and copy it from there. If you attempt to copy it directly from a file or from the GUI of another router, the key may not be in the correct format, and authentication will fail.

### PuTTY Session Configuration

- Open the `c:\bin\putty.exe` application.
- In the configuration window, navigate to *Connection* → *Data* and enter the username (the router's user to whom the public key was saved) in the *Auto-login username* field.
- Under *Connection* → *SSH* → *Auth* → *Credentials*, click the *Browse* button near the *Private key file for authentication* field, and select your *hostprivatekey* file generated earlier.
- In the configuration window, navigate to the *Session* menu item and configure the following:
  - *Host Name*: IP address of your router.
  - *Port*: 22.
  - *Connection Type*: SSH.
  - *Saved Session*: Enter a name for this session.
  - Click *Save* to store these session settings.

## Connecting to the Router

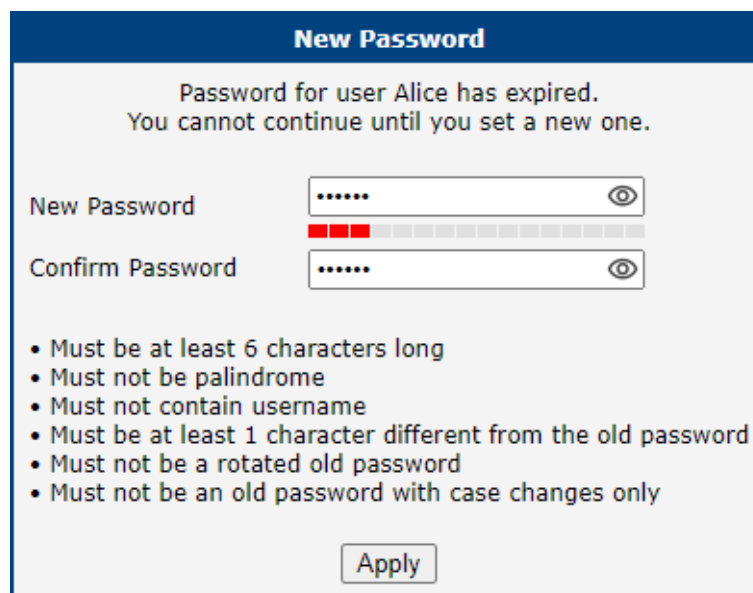
- Open the `c:\bin\putty.exe` application.
- Select your session and click the *Load* button.
- Click *Open* to establish the connection.
- If everything is configured correctly, an SSH console prompt will open with the user automatically logged in.

### 5.2.3 Forced Password Change

If a user is required to change their password, the prompt appears upon login, whether accessing the system via the web interface or the console environment. The password change is required in the following situations:

- When logging into a new router for the first time.
- When the user's password has expired after the *Expire Password After* period; see Chapter [3.17.1 Authentication](#).
- When an *Admin*-role user has forcefully changed the password.
- When a *Configuration Reset* or *Factory Reset* is performed on the router.

The dialog for entering a new password is shown in Figure 102. The new password must comply with the rules stated in the GUI, which depend on the *Force Password Complexity* level set in *Configuration* → *Services* → *Authentication*, as described in Chapter [3.17.1](#).



**New Password**

Password for user Alice has expired.  
You cannot continue until you set a new one.

New Password

Confirm Password

- Must be at least 6 characters long
- Must not be palindrome
- Must not contain username
- Must be at least 1 character different from the old password
- Must not be a rotated old password
- Must not be an old password with case changes only

Figure 102: Forced to Change the Password in GUI

## 5.3 Change Profile

In addition to the standard profile, up to three alternate router configurations or profiles can be stored in router's non-volatile memory. You can save the current configuration to a router profile through the *Change Profile* menu item. Select the alternate profile to store the settings to and ensure that the *Copy settings from current profile to selected profile* box is checked. The current settings will be stored in the alternate profile after the *Apply* button is pressed. Any changes will take effect after restarting router through the *Reboot* menu in the web administrator or using an SMS message.

**Example of using profiles:** Profiles can be used to switch between different modes of operation of the router such as PPP connection, VPN tunnels, etc. It is then possible to switch between these settings using the front panel binary input, an SMS message, or Web interface of the router.

| Change Profile                                                                  |            |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------|
| Profile                                                                         | Standard ▼ |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Copy settings from current profile to selected profile |            |
| <input type="button" value="Apply"/>                                            |            |

Figure 103: Change Profile

## 5.4 Set Date and Time



This administration page is not for configuring the NTP client, but only for one-time date and time settings. For permanent NTP client configuration, please go to the *Configuration* → *Services* → *NTP* page.

There are three ways to set the system date and time on a one-time basis, as shown in the figure below:

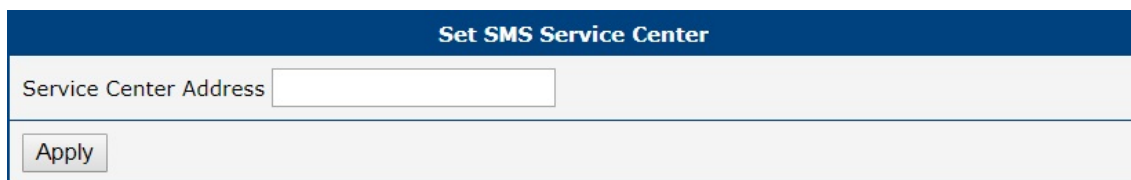
1. **Set current browser time:** This option sets the device's clock to match the time displayed on your web browser.
2. **Set specific date/time:** You can manually input the date and time. Ensure you adhere to the **yyyy-mm-dd** format for the date. For the time, use the **HH:MM:SS** format. **Note:** The time preloaded is the browser time, not the router time.
3. **Query NTP server:** To query the date and time from an NTP server, input the address of the NTP server. The system supports both IPv4 and IPv6 addresses, as well as domain names.

| Set Date and Time                    |                                             |
|--------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| <input checked="" type="radio"/>     | Set current browser time                    |
| <input type="radio"/>                | Set specific date / time                    |
| Date                                 | <input type="text" value="2024 - 05 - 23"/> |
| Time                                 | <input type="text" value="12 : 34 : 28"/>   |
| <input type="radio"/>                | Query NTP server                            |
| NTP Server Address                   | <input type="text" value="pool.ntp.org"/>   |
| <input type="button" value="Apply"/> |                                             |

Figure 104: Set Real Time Clock

## 5.5 Set SMS Service Center

The function requires you to enter the phone number of the SMS service center to send SMS messages. To specify the SMS service center phone number use the *Set SMS Service Center* configuration form in the *Administration* section of the main menu. You can leave the field blank if your SIM card contains the phone number of the SMS service center by default. This phone number can have a value without an international prefix (xxx-xxx-xxx) or with an international prefix (+420-xxx-xxx-xxx). If you are unable to send or receive SMS messages, contact your carrier to find out if this parameter is required.

The image shows a web form titled "Set SMS Service Center". It has a dark blue header bar with the title in white. Below the header, there is a light gray section containing a label "Service Center Address" followed by a white text input field. At the bottom of this section is a gray button labeled "Apply".

| Set SMS Service Center               |                      |
|--------------------------------------|----------------------|
| Service Center Address               | <input type="text"/> |
| <input type="button" value="Apply"/> |                      |

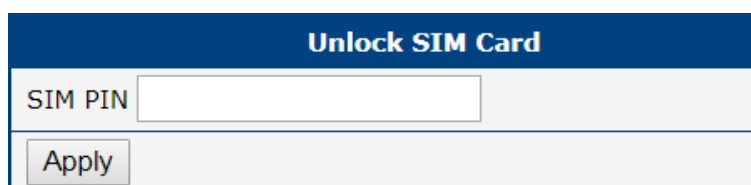
Figure 105: Set SMS Service Center Address

## 5.6 Unlock SIM Card

It is possible to use the SIM card protected by PIN number in the router – just fill in the PIN on the *Mobile WAN Configuration* page. Here you can remove the PIN protection (4–8 digit Personal Identification Number) from the SIM card, if your SIM card is protected by one. Open the *Unlock SIM Card* form in the *Administration* section of the main menu and enter the PIN number in the *SIM PIN* field, then click the *Apply* button. It is applied on the currently enabled SIM card, or on the first SIM card if there is no SIM card enabled at the moment.



The SIM card is blocked after three failed attempts to enter the PIN code. Unblocking of SIM card by PUK number is described in next chapter.

The image shows a web form titled "Unlock SIM Card". It has a dark blue header bar with the title in white. Below the header, there is a light gray section containing a label "SIM PIN" followed by a white text input field. At the bottom of this section is a gray button labeled "Apply".

| Unlock SIM Card                      |                      |
|--------------------------------------|----------------------|
| SIM PIN                              | <input type="text"/> |
| <input type="button" value="Apply"/> |                      |

Figure 106: Unlock SIM Card

## 5.7 Unblock SIM Card

On this page you can unblock the SIM card after 3 wrong PIN attempts or change the PIN code of the SIM card. To unblock the SIM card, go to *Unblock SIM Card* administration page. In both cases enter the PUK code into *SIM PUK* field and new SIM PIN code into *New SIM PIN* field. To proceed click on *Apply* button. It is applied on the currently enabled SIM card, or on the first SIM card if there is no SIM card enabled at the moment.



The SIM card will be permanently blocked after the three unsuccessful attempts of the PUK code entering.

| Unblock SIM Card                     |                      |
|--------------------------------------|----------------------|
| SIM PUK                              | <input type="text"/> |
| New SIM PIN                          | <input type="text"/> |
| <input type="button" value="Apply"/> |                      |

Figure 107: Unblock SIM Card

## 5.8 Send SMS

You can send an SMS message from the router to test the cellular network. Use the *Send SMS* dialog in the *Administration* section of the main menu to send SMS messages. Enter the *Phone number* and text of your message in the *Message* field, then click the *Send* button. The router limits the maximum length of an SMS to 160 characters. (To send longer messages, install the [pduSMS](#) router app).

| Send SMS                            |                      |
|-------------------------------------|----------------------|
| Phone number                        | <input type="text"/> |
| Message                             | <input type="text"/> |
| <input type="button" value="Send"/> |                      |

Figure 108: Send SMS

It is also possible to send an SMS message using CGI script. For details of this method. See the application note *Commands and Scripts* [1].

## 5.9 Backup Configuration



Keep in mind potential security issues when creating backup, especially for user accounts. Encrypted configuration or secured connection to the router should be used.

You can save actual configuration of the router using the *Backup Configuration* item in the *Administration* menu section. If you click on this item a configuration pane will open, see Figure 109. Here you can choose what will be backed up. You can back up configuration of the router (item *Configuration*) or configuration of all user accounts (item *Users*). Both types of the configuration can be backed up separately or at once into one configuration file.



It is recommended to save the configuration into an encrypted file. If the encryption password is not configured, the configuration is stored into an unencrypted file.

Click on *Apply* button and the configuration will be stored into configuration file (file with *cfg* extension) into a directory according the settings of the web browser. Stored configuration can be later used for its restoration, see Chapter 5.10 for more information.

| Backup Configuration                       |                      |
|--------------------------------------------|----------------------|
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>        | Backup configuration |
| <input type="checkbox"/>                   | Backup users         |
| Encryption Password *                      | <input type="text"/> |
| * can be blank                             |                      |
| <input type="button" value="Save Backup"/> |                      |

Figure 109: Backup Configuration

## 5.10 Restore Configuration

You can restore a router configuration stored in a file. You have created the file as shown in the previous chapter.

To restore the configuration from this file, use the *Restore Configuration* form. Next, click the *Browse* button to navigate the directory containing the configuration file you wish to load to the router. If the configuration was stored in an encrypted file, the decryption password must be set to decrypt the file successfully. To start the restoration process, click on *Apply* button.

| Restore Configuration                |                                                           |
|--------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|
| Configuration File                   | <input type="button" value="Choose File"/> No file chosen |
| Decryption Password *                | <input type="text"/>                                      |
| * <i>can be blank</i>                |                                                           |
| <input type="button" value="Apply"/> |                                                           |

Figure 110: Restore Configuration

### 5.11 Update Firmware



For enhanced security, it is strongly recommended to regularly update your router’s firmware to the latest version. Avoid downgrading the firmware to a version older than the production release, and refrain from uploading firmware meant for different models, as these actions can lead to device mal-function.



Be aware that firmware updates may cause compatibility issues with Router Apps. To minimize such issues, it is advisable to update all Router Apps to their latest versions concurrently with the router’s firmware. Detailed compatibility information for each app is provided at the beginning of its Application Note.



The latest firmware for our routers is available on the Engineering Portal’s product page. For downloading the appropriate firmware for your router model, please visit <https://icr.advantech.com/support/router-models>.

The *Update Firmware* administration page showcases the current firmware version and the name of the router’s firmware, as illustrated in Figure 111. This page also offers the capability to update the router’s firmware, accommodating both manual updates and online updates from the public server.

| Update Firmware                       |                                                         |
|---------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------|
| Firmware Version : 6.3.9 (2023-01-04) |                                                         |
| Firmware Name : ICR-445x.bin          |                                                         |
| New Firmware                          | <div>Choose File</div> No file chosen <div>Update</div> |
| <div>Check for updates</div>          | Last check 2024-01-18 12:06:55                          |
| Newest FW online 6.3.10               | <div>Download and Update</div>                          |

Figure 111: Update Firmware Administration Page

#### Manual Firmware Update

To manually update the router’s firmware, click on the *Choose File* button and select the firmware file. Then, press the *Update* button to initiate the firmware update process.

#### Online Firmware Update

Starting with firmware version 1.4.5, the firmware can be updated from a public server. Ensure that your router is properly configured as described in Chapter 4.2.

To verify the availability of a newer firmware version on the server, click the *Check for updates* button. If a new version is available, the version information and a *Download and Update* button will appear. Clicking this button initiates the firmware update process.

During the firmware update, the router will display status messages as depicted in Figure 112. Upon completion, the router will automatically reboot. After rebooting, click the *here* link in the web interface to reopen it.

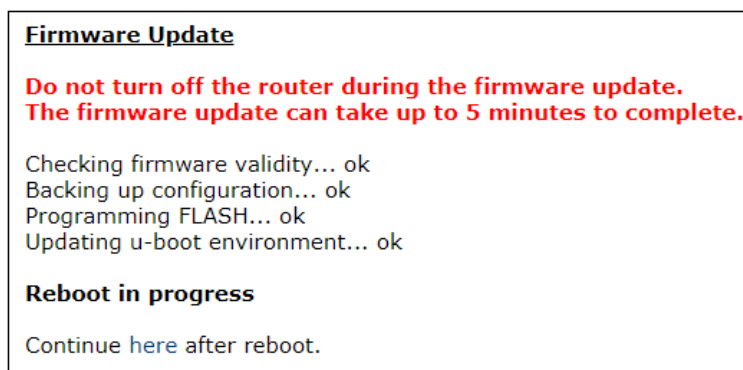


Figure 112: Process of Firmware Update

## 5.12 Reboot

To reboot the router select the *Reboot* menu item and then press the *Reboot* button.

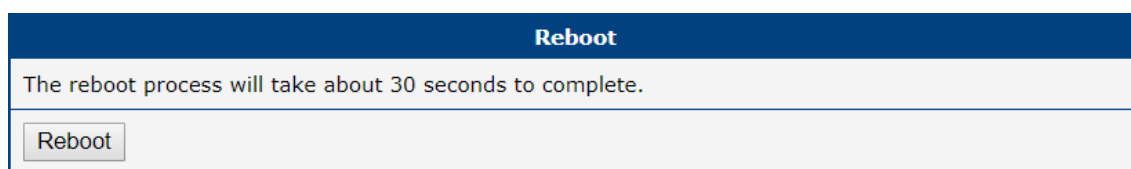


Figure 113: Reboot

## 5.13 Logout

By clicking the *Logout* menu item, the user is logged out from the web interface.

## 6. Typical Situations

Although Advantech routers have wide variety of uses, they are commonly used in the following ways. All the examples below are for IPv4 networks.

### 6.1 Access to the Internet from LAN

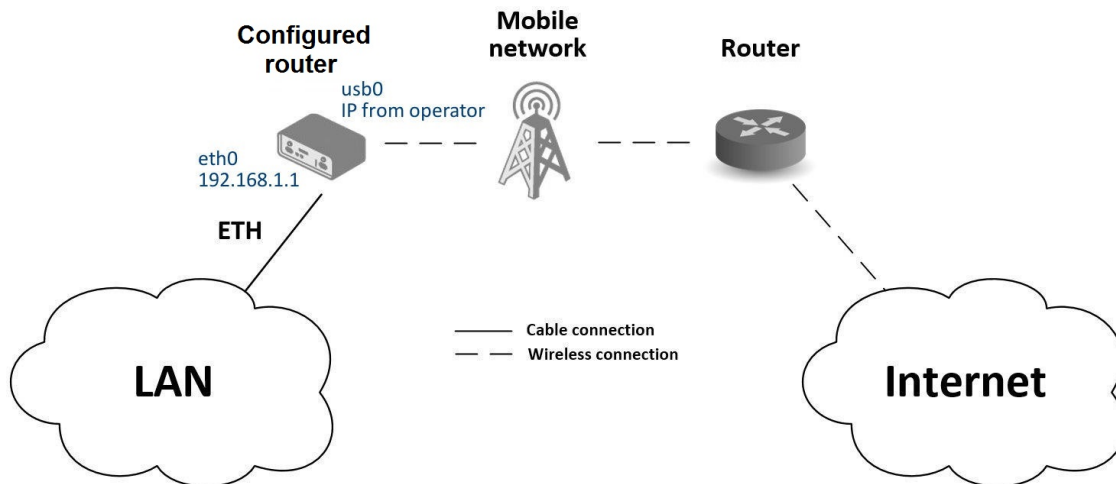


Figure 114: Access to the Internet from LAN – Sample Topology

In this example, a LAN connecting to the Internet via a mobile network, the SIM card with a data tariff has to be provided by the mobile network operator. This requires no initial configuration. You only need to place the SIM card in the *SIM1* slot (Primary SIM card), attach the antenna to the *ANT* connector and connect the computer (or switch and computers) to the router's *ETH0* interface (LAN). Wait a moment after turning on the router. The router will connect to the mobile network and the Internet. This will be indicated by the LEDs on the front panel of the router (*WAN* and *DAT*).

Additional configuration can be done in the *Ethernet* and *Mobile WAN* items in the *Configuration* section of the web interface.

**Ethernet configuration:** The factory default IP address of the router's *ETH0* interface is in the form of 192.168.1.1. This can be changed (after login to the router) in the *Ethernet* item in the *Configuration* section, see Figure 115. In this case there is no need of any additional configuration. The DHCP server is also enabled by factory default (so the first connected computer will get the 192.168.1.2 IP address etc.). Other configuration options are described in Chapter 3.1.

**Mobile WAN Configuration:** Use the *Mobile WAN* item in the *Configuration* section to configure the connection to the mobile network, see Figure 116. In this case (depending on the SIM card) the configuration form can be blank. But make sure that *Create connection to mobile network* is checked (this is the factory default). For more details, see Chapter 3.3.1.

To check whether the connection is working properly, go to the *Mobile WAN* item in the *Status* section. You will see information about operator, signal strength etc. At the bottom, you should see the message: *Connection successfully established*. The *Network* item should display information about the newly created network interface. You should also see the IP address provided by the network operator, as well as the route table etc. The LAN now has Internet access.

| Status                                                                                          | ETH0 Configuration                                             |                     |                    |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------|--------------------|
| General                                                                                         |                                                                |                     |                    |
| Mobile WAN                                                                                      |                                                                |                     |                    |
| Network                                                                                         |                                                                |                     |                    |
| DHCP                                                                                            |                                                                |                     |                    |
| IPsec                                                                                           |                                                                |                     |                    |
| DynDNS                                                                                          |                                                                |                     |                    |
| System Log                                                                                      |                                                                |                     |                    |
| <b>Configuration</b>                                                                            |                                                                |                     |                    |
| Ethernet                                                                                        |                                                                |                     |                    |
| • <b>ETH0</b>  |                                                                |                     |                    |
| • ETH1                                                                                          |                                                                |                     |                    |
| VRRP                                                                                            |                                                                |                     |                    |
| Mobile WAN                                                                                      |                                                                |                     |                    |
| PPPoE                                                                                           |                                                                |                     |                    |
| Backup Routes                                                                                   |                                                                |                     |                    |
| Static Routes                                                                                   |                                                                |                     |                    |
| Firewall                                                                                        |                                                                |                     |                    |
| NAT                                                                                             |                                                                |                     |                    |
|                                                                                                 | DHCP Client                                                    | IPv4<br>disabled ▼  | IPv6<br>disabled ▼ |
|                                                                                                 | IP Address                                                     | 192.168.1.1         |                    |
|                                                                                                 | Subnet Mask / Prefix                                           | 255.255.255.0       |                    |
|                                                                                                 | Default Gateway                                                |                     |                    |
|                                                                                                 | DNS Server                                                     |                     |                    |
|                                                                                                 | Bridged                                                        | no ▼                |                    |
|                                                                                                 | Media Type                                                     | auto-negotiation ▼  |                    |
|                                                                                                 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable dynamic DHCP leases |                     |                    |
|                                                                                                 | IP Pool Start                                                  | IPv4<br>192.168.1.2 | IPv6<br>           |
|                                                                                                 | IP Pool End                                                    | 192.168.1.254       |                    |
|                                                                                                 | Lease Time                                                     | 600                 | 600 sec            |

Figure 115: Access to the Internet from LAN – Ethernet Configuration

| Status                                                                                                | 1st Mobile WAN Configuration                                            |                       |                       |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| General                                                                                               |                                                                         |                       |                       |
| Mobile WAN                                                                                            |                                                                         |                       |                       |
| Network                                                                                               |                                                                         |                       |                       |
| DHCP                                                                                                  |                                                                         |                       |                       |
| IPsec                                                                                                 |                                                                         |                       |                       |
| DynDNS                                                                                                |                                                                         |                       |                       |
| System Log                                                                                            |                                                                         |                       |                       |
| <b>Configuration</b>                                                                                  |                                                                         |                       |                       |
| Ethernet                                                                                              |                                                                         |                       |                       |
| VRRP                                                                                                  |                                                                         |                       |                       |
| <b>Mobile WAN</b>  |                                                                         |                       |                       |
| PPPoE                                                                                                 |                                                                         |                       |                       |
| Backup Routes                                                                                         |                                                                         |                       |                       |
| Static Routes                                                                                         |                                                                         |                       |                       |
| Firewall                                                                                              |                                                                         |                       |                       |
| NAT                                                                                                   |                                                                         |                       |                       |
| OpenVPN                                                                                               |                                                                         |                       |                       |
| IPsec                                                                                                 |                                                                         |                       |                       |
| GRE                                                                                                   |                                                                         |                       |                       |
| L2TP                                                                                                  |                                                                         |                       |                       |
|                                                                                                       | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Create connection to mobile network |                       |                       |
|                                                                                                       |                                                                         | 1st SIM card          | 2nd SIM card          |
|                                                                                                       | APN *                                                                   |                       |                       |
|                                                                                                       | Username *                                                              |                       |                       |
|                                                                                                       | Password *                                                              |                       |                       |
|                                                                                                       | Authentication                                                          | PAP or CHAP ▼         | PAP or CHAP ▼         |
|                                                                                                       | IP Mode                                                                 | IPv4 ▼                | IPv4 ▼                |
|                                                                                                       | IP Address *                                                            |                       |                       |
|                                                                                                       | Dial Number *                                                           |                       |                       |
|                                                                                                       | Operator *                                                              |                       |                       |
|                                                                                                       | Network Type                                                            | automatic selection ▼ | automatic selection ▼ |
|                                                                                                       | PIN *                                                                   |                       |                       |
|                                                                                                       | MRU                                                                     | 1500                  | 1500 bytes            |
|                                                                                                       | MTU                                                                     | 1500                  | 1500 bytes            |
|                                                                                                       | DNS Settings                                                            | get from operator ▼   | get from operator ▼   |

Figure 116: Access to the Internet from LAN – Mobile WAN Configuration

6.2 Backup Access to the Internet from LAN

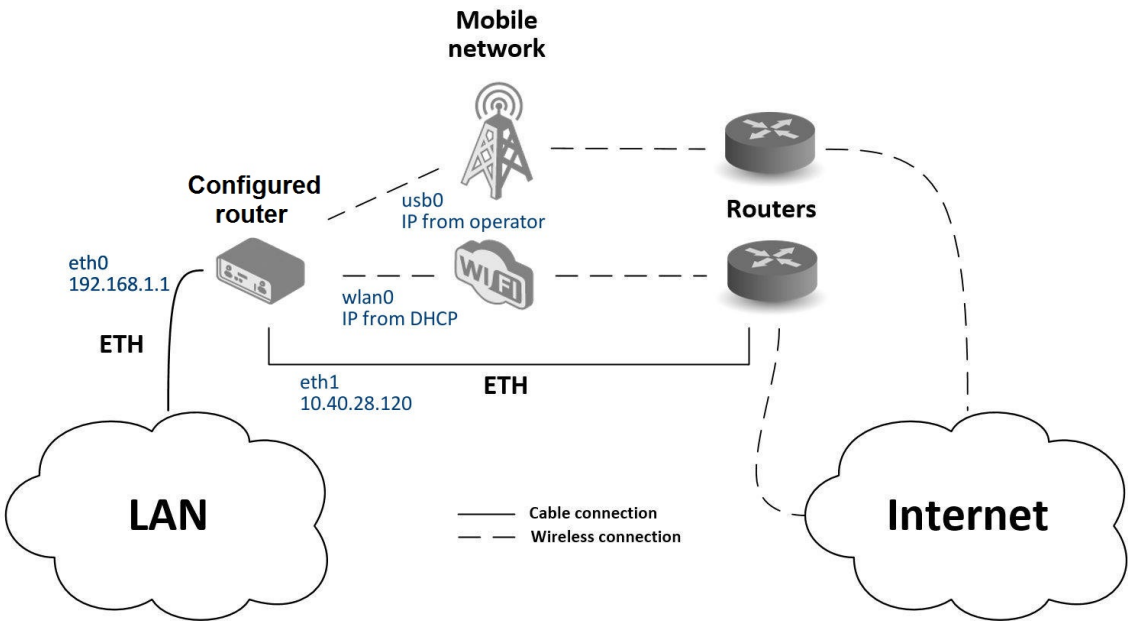


Figure 117: Backup Access to the Internet – Sample Topology

The configuration form on the *Backup Routes* page lets you back up the primary connection with alternative connections to the Internet/mobile network. Each backup connection can be assigned a priority.

| Status        | ETH1 Configuration                                  |                  |
|---------------|-----------------------------------------------------|------------------|
| General       | IPv4                                                | IPv6             |
| Mobile WAN    | DHCP Client                                         | disabled         |
| Network       | IP Address                                          | 10.40.28.120     |
| DHCP          | Subnet Mask / Prefix                                | 255.255.252.0    |
| IPsec         | Default Gateway                                     | 10.40.30.1       |
| DynDNS        | DNS Server                                          | 192.168.2.27     |
| System Log    |                                                     |                  |
| Configuration | Bridged                                             | no               |
| Ethernet      | Media Type                                          | auto-negotiation |
| • ETH0        | <input type="checkbox"/> Enable dynamic DHCP leases |                  |
| • <b>ETH1</b> | IP Pool Start                                       |                  |
| VRRP          | IP Pool End                                         |                  |
| Mobile WAN    | Lease Time                                          | 600 sec          |
| PPPoE         |                                                     |                  |
| Backup Routes |                                                     |                  |
| Static Routes |                                                     |                  |
| Firewall      |                                                     |                  |

Figure 118: Backup Access to the Internet – Ethernet Configuration

**Ethernet configuration:** In the *Ethernet* → *ETH0* item, you can use the factory default configuration as in the previous situation. The *ETH1* interface on the front panel of the router is used for connection to the Internet. It can be configured in *ETH1* menu item. Connect the cable to the router and set the appropriate values as in Figure 118. You may configure the static IP address, default gateway and DNS server. Changes will take effect after you click on the *Apply* button. Detailed Ethernet configuration is described in Chapter 3.1.

**WLAN configuration:** To use the WLAN you will need to configure the WiFi station in the *WiFi* → *Station* item, as shown in Figure 119. Check the *Enable WiFi STA*, enable the DHCP client and fill in the addresses of the default gateway and DNS server. Next, fill in the data for the connection (SSID, authentication, encryption, WPA PSK Type and password). For details see Chapter 3.6. Click the *Apply* button to confirm the changes.

To verify that the WiFi connection is successful, check the *WiFi* item in the *Status* section. If the connection is successful you should see the following message: `wpa\_state=COMPLETED`.

| Status               | WiFi STA Configuration                              |                  |
|----------------------|-----------------------------------------------------|------------------|
| General              | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable WiFi STA |                  |
| Mobile WAN           | IPv4                                                | IPv6             |
| WiFi                 | DHCP Client                                         | enabled          |
| Network              | IP Address                                          |                  |
| DHCP                 | Subnet Mask / Prefix                                |                  |
| IPsec                | Default Gateway                                     | 192.168.3.1      |
| DynDNS               | DNS Server                                          | 192.168.3.1      |
| System Log           |                                                     |                  |
| <b>Configuration</b> |                                                     |                  |
| Ethernet             | SSID                                                | WiFiNetwork      |
| VRRP                 | Probe Hidden SSID                                   | enabled          |
| Mobile WAN           | Country Code *                                      |                  |
| PPPoE                |                                                     |                  |
| WiFi                 | Authentication                                      | WPA2-PSK         |
| • Access Point       | Encryption                                          | AES              |
| • <b>Station</b>     | WEP Key Type                                        | ASCII            |
| Backup Routes        | WEP Default Key                                     | 1                |
| Static Routes        | WEP Key 1                                           |                  |
| Firewall             | WEP Key 2                                           |                  |
| NAT                  | WEP Key 3                                           |                  |
| OpenVPN              | WEP Key 4                                           |                  |
| IPsec                | WPA PSK Type                                        | ASCII passphrase |
| GRE                  | WPA PSK                                             | WiFiPassword     |
| L2TP                 |                                                     |                  |
| PPTP                 |                                                     |                  |
| Services             |                                                     |                  |
| Expansion Port 1     |                                                     |                  |
| Expansion Port 2     |                                                     |                  |

Figure 119: Backup Access to the Internet – WiFi Configuration

**Mobile WAN configuration:** To configure the mobile connection it should be sufficient to insert the SIM card into the *SIM1* slot and attach the antenna to the *ANT* connector. (Depending on the SIM card you are using).

To set up backup routes you will need to enable Check Connection in the *Mobile WAN* item. (See Figure 120.) Set the *Check connection* option to *enabled + bind* and fill in an IP address of the mobile operator's DNS server or any other reliably available server and enter the time interval of the check. For detailed configuration, see Chapter 3.3.1.

| 1st Mobile WAN Configuration                                                                 |                       |                       |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|
|                                                                                              | 1st SIM card          | 2nd SIM card          |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Create connection to mobile network                      |                       |                       |
| APN *                                                                                        | <input type="text"/>  | <input type="text"/>  |
| Username *                                                                                   | <input type="text"/>  | <input type="text"/>  |
| Password *                                                                                   | <input type="text"/>  | <input type="text"/>  |
| Authentication                                                                               | PAP or CHAP ▼         | PAP or CHAP ▼         |
| IP Mode                                                                                      | IPv4 ▼                | IPv4 ▼                |
| IP Address *                                                                                 | <input type="text"/>  | <input type="text"/>  |
| Dial Number *                                                                                | <input type="text"/>  | <input type="text"/>  |
| Operator *                                                                                   | <input type="text"/>  | <input type="text"/>  |
| Network Type                                                                                 | automatic selection ▼ | automatic selection ▼ |
| PIN *                                                                                        | <input type="text"/>  | <input type="text"/>  |
| MRU                                                                                          | 1500                  | 1500                  |
| MTU                                                                                          | 1500                  | 1500                  |
|                                                                                              |                       | bytes                 |
| DNS Settings                                                                                 | get from operator ▼   | get from operator ▼   |
| DNS IP Address                                                                               | <input type="text"/>  | <input type="text"/>  |
| DNS IPv6 Address                                                                             | <input type="text"/>  | <input type="text"/>  |
| (The feature of check connection to mobile network is necessary for uninterrupted operation) |                       |                       |
| Check Connection                                                                             | enabled + bind ▼      | disabled ▼            |
| Ping IP Address                                                                              | 8.8.8.8               | <input type="text"/>  |
| Ping IPv6 Address                                                                            | <input type="text"/>  | <input type="text"/>  |
| Ping Interval                                                                                | <input type="text"/>  | <input type="text"/>  |
|                                                                                              |                       | sec                   |
| Ping Timeout                                                                                 | 10                    | 10                    |
|                                                                                              |                       | sec                   |

Figure 120: Backup Access to the Internet – Mobile WAN Configuration

**Backup Routes configuration:** After setting up the backup routes you will need to set their priorities. In Figure 121, the ETH1 wired connection has the highest priority. If that connection fails, the second choice will be the WiFi wlan0 network interface.

The backup routes system must be activated by checking the *Enable backup routes switching* item for each of the routes. Click the *Apply* button to confirm the changes. For detailed configuration see Chapter 3.7.

You can verify the configured network interfaces in the *Status* section in the *Network* item. You will see the active network interfaces: eth0 (connection to LAN), eth1 (wired connection to the Internet), wlan0 (WiFi connection to the Internet). IP addresses and other data are included.

At the bottom of the page you will see the *Route Table* and corresponding changes if a wired connection fails or a cable is disconnected (the default route changes to wlan0). Similarly, if a WiFi connection is not available, the mobile connection will be used.

Backup routes work even if they are not activated in the *Backup Routes* item, but the router will use the factory defaults.

| Status                                                                                                 | Backup Routes Configuration                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| General                                                                                                | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable backup routes switching<br>Mode: <span>Single WAN</span>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| Mobile WAN                                                                                             | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable backup routes switching for Mobile WAN<br>Priority: <span>3rd</span> <br>Weight: <input type="text"/>                                                                                                                                                                   |
| WiFi                                                                                                   | <input type="checkbox"/> Enable backup routes switching for PPPoE<br>Priority: <span>1st</span><br>Ping IP Address: <input type="text"/><br>Ping IPv6 Address: <input type="text"/><br>Ping Interval: <input type="text"/> sec<br>Ping Timeout: <span>10</span> sec<br>Weight: <input type="text"/>                                                                                                   |
| Network                                                                                                | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable backup routes switching for WiFi STA<br>Priority: <span>2nd</span> <br>Ping IP Address: <input type="text"/><br>Ping IPv6 Address: <input type="text"/><br>Ping Interval: <input type="text"/> sec<br>Ping Timeout: <span>10</span> sec<br>Weight: <input type="text"/> |
| DHCP                                                                                                   | <input type="checkbox"/> Enable backup routes switching for ETH0<br>Priority: <span>1st</span><br>Ping IP Address: <input type="text"/><br>Ping IPv6 Address: <input type="text"/><br>Ping Interval: <input type="text"/> sec<br>Ping Timeout: <span>10</span> sec<br>Weight: <input type="text"/>                                                                                                    |
| IPsec                                                                                                  | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable backup routes switching for ETH1<br>Priority: <span>1st</span> <br>Ping IP Address: <input type="text"/><br>Ping IPv6 Address: <input type="text"/><br>Ping Interval: <input type="text"/> sec<br>Ping Timeout: <span>10</span> sec<br>Weight: <input type="text"/>   |
| DynDNS                                                                                                 | <input type="text"/>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| System Log                                                                                             | <input type="text"/>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| <b>Configuration</b>                                                                                   |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Ethernet                                                                                               |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| VRRP                                                                                                   |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Mobile WAN                                                                                             |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| PPPoE                                                                                                  |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| WiFi                                                                                                   |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| <b>Backup Routes</b>  |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Static Routes                                                                                          |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Firewall                                                                                               |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| NAT                                                                                                    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| OpenVPN                                                                                                |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| IPsec                                                                                                  |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| GRE                                                                                                    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| L2TP                                                                                                   |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| PPTP                                                                                                   |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Services                                                                                               |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Expansion Port                                                                                         |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Scripts                                                                                                |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Automatic Update                                                                                       |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| <b>Customization</b>                                                                                   |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| User Modules                                                                                           |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| <b>Administration</b>                                                                                  |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Users                                                                                                  |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Change Profile                                                                                         |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| <b>Change Password</b>                                                                                 |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Set Real Time Clock                                                                                    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Set SMS Service Center                                                                                 |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Unlock SIM Card                                                                                        |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Unblock SIM Card                                                                                       |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Send SMS                                                                                               |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Backup Configuration                                                                                   |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Restore Configuration                                                                                  |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Update Firmware                                                                                        |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Reboot                                                                                                 |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Logout                                                                                                 |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|                                                                                                        | <input type="button" value="Apply"/>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |

Figure 121: Backup Access to the Internet – Backup Routes Configuration

## 6.3 Secure Networks Interconnection or Using VPN

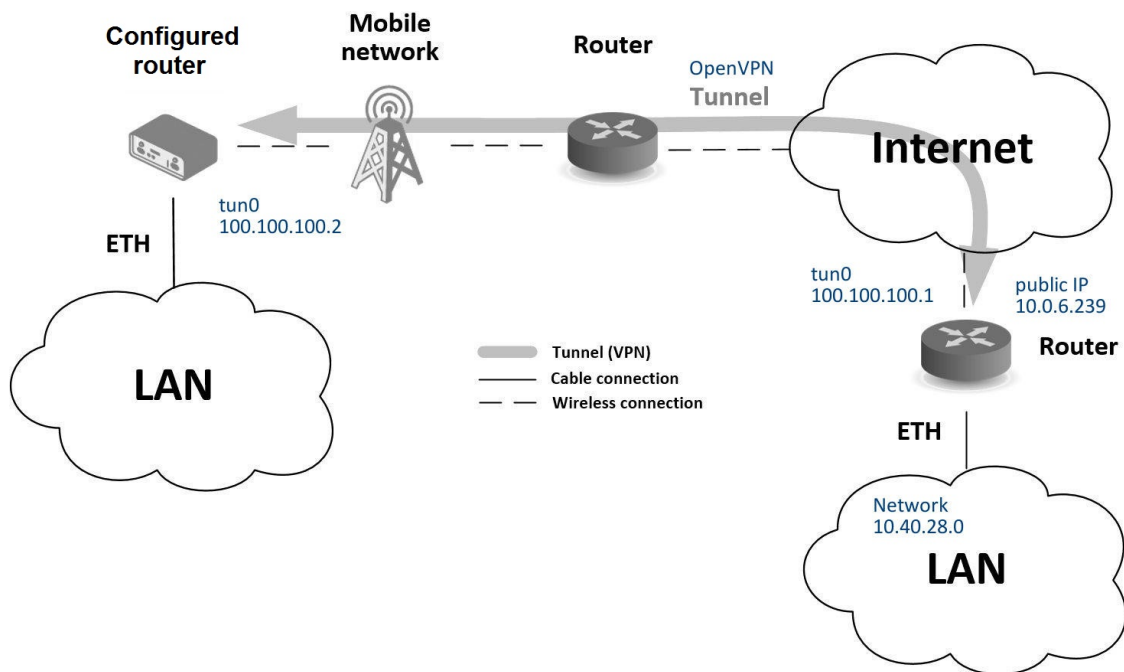


Figure 122: Secure Networks Interconnection – Sample Topology

VPN (Virtual Private Network) is a protocol used to create a secure connection between two LANs, allowing them to function as a single network. The connection is secured (encrypted) and authenticated (verified). It is used over public, untrusted networks, see fig. 122. You may use several different secure protocols.

- *OpenVPN* (it is a configuration item in the web interface of the router), see Chapter 3.11 or Application Note [5],
- *IPsec* (it is also configuration item in the web interface of the router), see Chapter 3.12 or Application Note [6].

You can also create non-encrypted tunnels: *GRE*, *PPTP* and *L2TP*. You can use GRE or L2TP tunnel in combination with IPsec to create VPNs.

There is an example of an OpenVPN tunnel in Figure 122. To establish this tunnel you will need the opposite router's IP address, the opposite router's network IP address (not necessary) and the pre-shared secret (key). Create the OpenVPN tunnel by configuring the *Mobile WAN* and *OpenVPN* items in the *Configuration* section.

**Mobile WAN configuration:** The mobile connection can be configured as described in the previous situations. (The router connects itself after a SIM card is inserted into *SIM1* slot and an antenna is attached to the *ANT* connector.)

Configuration is accessible via the *Mobile WAN* item the *Configuration* section, see Chapter 3.3.1). The mobile connection has to be enabled.

**OpenVPN configuration:** OpenVPN configuration is done with the *OpenVPN* item in the *Configuration* section. Choose one of the two possible tunnels and enable it by checking the *Create 1st OpenVPN tunnel*. You will need to fill in the protocol and the port (according to the settings on the opposite side of the tunnel or Open VPN server). You may fill in the public IP address of the opposite side of the tunnel including the remote subnet and mask (not necessary). The important items are *Local* and *Remote Interface IP Address* where the information regarding the interfaces of the tunnel's end must be filled in. In the example shown, the *pre-shared secret* is known, so you would choose this option in the *Authentication Mode* item and insert the secret (key) into the field. Confirm the configuration clicking the *Apply* button. For detailed configuration see Chapter 3.11 or Application Note [5].

| Status     | 1st OpenVPN Tunnel Configuration                              |                                     |
|------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| General    | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Create 1st OpenVPN tunnel |                                     |
| Mobile WAN | Description *                                                 | myTunnel                            |
| WiFi       | Interface Type                                                | TUN ▼                               |
| Network    | Protocol                                                      | UDP ▼                               |
| DHCP       | UDP Port                                                      | 3000                                |
| IPsec      | Remote IP Address *                                           | 10.0.6.239                          |
| DynDNS     | Remote Subnet *                                               | 10.40.28.0                          |
| System Log | Remote Subnet Mask *                                          | 255.255.252.0                       |
|            | Redirect Gateway                                              | no ▼                                |
|            | Local Interface IP Address                                    | 100.100.100.2                       |
|            | Remote Interface IP Address                                   | 100.100.100.1                       |
|            | Remote IPv6 Subnet *                                          |                                     |
|            | Remote IPv6 Subnet Prefix Length *                            |                                     |
|            | Local Interface IPv6 Address *                                |                                     |
|            | Remote Interface IPv6 Address *                               |                                     |
|            | Ping Interval *                                               | 10 sec                              |
|            | Ping Timeout *                                                | 30 sec                              |
|            | Renegotiate Interval *                                        | sec                                 |
|            | Max Fragment Size *                                           | bytes                               |
|            | Compression                                                   | LZO ▼                               |
|            | NAT Rules                                                     | not applied ▼                       |
|            | Authenticate Mode                                             | pre-shared secret ▼                 |
|            | Security Mode                                                 | tls-auth ▼                          |
|            | Pre-shared Secret                                             | #<br># 2048 OpenVPN static key<br># |

Figure 123: Secure Networks Interconnection – OpenVPN Configuration

The *Network* item in the *Status* section will let you verify the activated network interface `tun0` for the tunnel with the IP addresses of the tunnel's ends set. Successful connection can be verified in the *System Log* where you should see the message: Initialization Sequence Completed. The networks are now interconnected. This can also be verified by using the `ping` program. (Ping between tunnel's endpoint IP addresses from one of the routers. The console is accessible via SSH).

## 6.4 Serial Gateway

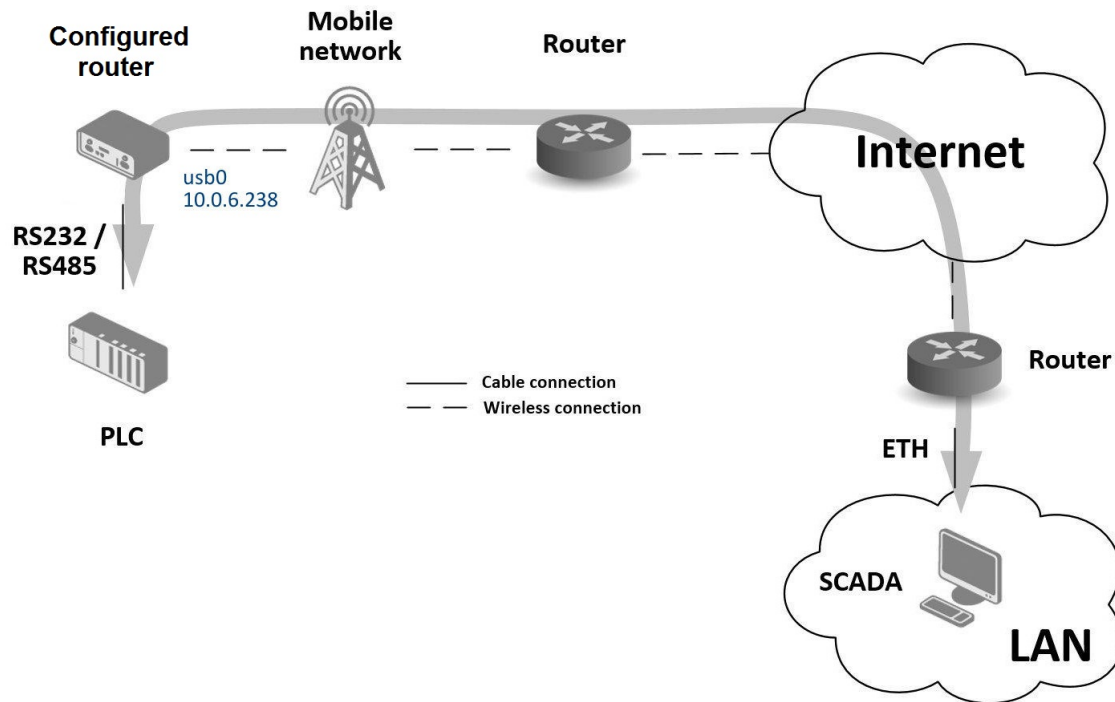


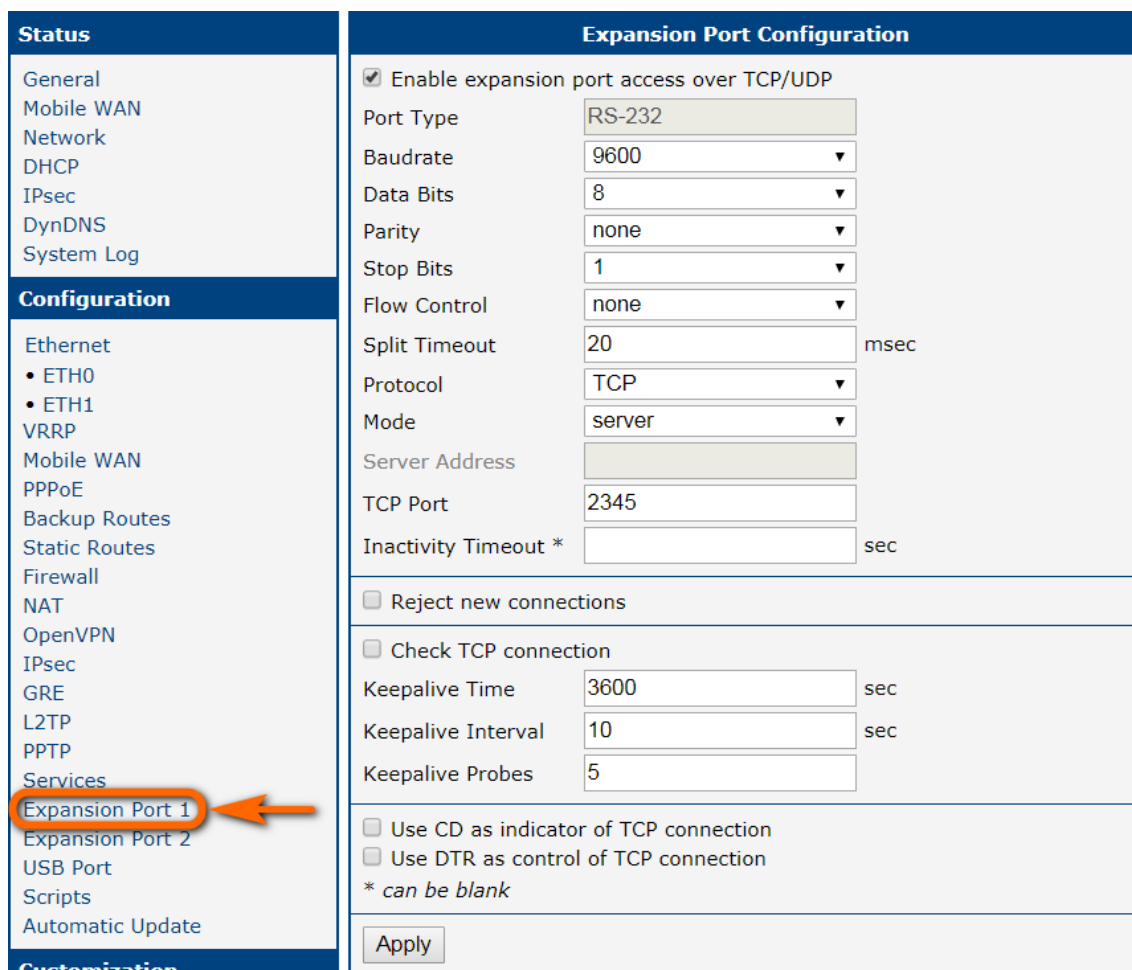
Figure 124: Serial Gateway – Sample Topology

The router's serial gateway function lets you establish serial connectivity across the Internet or with another network. Serial devices (meters, PLC, etc.) can then upload and download data, see Figure 124.

Configuration is done in the *Configuration* section, *Mobile WAN*, with the *Expansion Port 1* item for RS232, or *Expansion Port 2* for RS485. In this example, the RS232 interface of the router is used.

**Mobile WAN Configuration:** Mobile WAN configuration is the same as in the previous examples. Just insert the SIM card into the *SIM1* slot at the back of the router and attach the antenna to the *ANT* connector at the front. No extra configuration is needed (depending on the SIM card used). For more details see Chapter 3.3.1.

**Expansion Port 1 Configuration:** The RS232 interface (port) can be configured in the *Configuration* section, via the *Expansion Port 1* item, see Figure 125.) You will need to enable the RS232 port by checking *Enable expansion port 1 access over TCP/UDP*. You may edit the serial communication parameters (not needed in this example). The important items are *Protocol*, *Mode* and *Port*. These set the parameters of communication out to the network and the Internet. In this example the TCP protocol is chosen, and the router will work as a server listening on the 2345 TCP port. Confirm the configuration clicking the *Apply* button.



| Status     | Expansion Port Configuration                                                  |
|------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| General    | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable expansion port access over TCP/UDP |
| Mobile WAN | Port Type: RS-232                                                             |
| Network    | Baudrate: 9600                                                                |
| DHCP       | Data Bits: 8                                                                  |
| IPsec      | Parity: none                                                                  |
| DynDNS     | Stop Bits: 1                                                                  |
| System Log | Flow Control: none                                                            |
|            | Split Timeout: 20 msec                                                        |
|            | Protocol: TCP                                                                 |
|            | Mode: server                                                                  |
|            | Server Address:                                                               |
|            | TCP Port: 2345                                                                |
|            | Inactivity Timeout *: sec                                                     |
|            | <input type="checkbox"/> Reject new connections                               |
|            | <input type="checkbox"/> Check TCP connection                                 |
|            | Keepalive Time: 3600 sec                                                      |
|            | Keepalive Interval: 10 sec                                                    |
|            | Keepalive Probes: 5                                                           |
|            | <input type="checkbox"/> Use CD as indicator of TCP connection                |
|            | <input type="checkbox"/> Use DTR as control of TCP connection                 |
|            | * can be blank                                                                |
|            | Apply                                                                         |

Figure 125: Serial Gateway – konfigurace *Expansion Port 1*

To communicate with the serial device (PLC), connect from the PC (Labeled as SCADA in Figure 124) as a TCP client to the IP address 10.0.6.238, port 2345 (the public IP address of the SIM card used in the router). The devices can now communicate. To check the connection, go to *System Log* (*Status* section) and look for the *TCP connection established* message.

# Appendix A: Open Source Software License

The software in this device uses various pieces of open-source software governed by the following licenses:

- GPL versions 2 and 3
- LGPL version 2
- BSD-style licenses
- MIT-style licenses

The list of components and complete license texts can be found on the device itself. See the *Licenses* link at the bottom of the router's main Web page (*General Status*) or point your browser to this address (replace the DEVICE\_IP string with the actual router's IP address):

[https://DEVICE\\_IP/licenses.cgi](https://DEVICE_IP/licenses.cgi)

This is a written offer valid for three years since the device purchase, offering any third party for a charge no more than the cost of physically performing source distribution, a complete machine-readable copy of the corresponding source code on a flash drive medium. If you are interested in obtaining the source, please get in touch with us at:

[iiotcustomerservice@advantech.eu](mailto:iiotcustomerservice@advantech.eu)

Modifications and debugging of LGPL-linked executables:

The device manufacturer, with this, grants the right to use debugging techniques (e.g., decompilation) and make customer modifications of any executable linked with an LGPL library for its purposes. Note these rights are limited to the customer's usage. No further distribution of such modified executables and no transmission of the information obtained during these actions may be done.

Source codes under the GPL license are available at the following address:

<https://icr.advantech.com/source-code>

# Appendix B: Glossary and Acronyms

B | D | G | H | I | L | N | O | P | R | S | T | U | V | W | X

## B

**Backup Routes** Allows user to back up the primary connection with alternative connections to the Internet/mobile network. Each backup connection can have assigned a priority. Switching between connections is done based upon set priorities and the state of the connections.

## D

**DHCP** The Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) is a network protocol used to configure devices that are connected to a network so they can communicate on that network using the Internet Protocol (IP). The protocol is implemented in a client-server model, in which DHCP clients request configuration data, such as an IP address, a default route, and one or more DNS server addresses from a DHCP server.

**DHCP client** Requests network configuration from DHCP server.

**DHCP server** Answers configuration request by DHCP clients and sends network configuration details.

**DNS** The Domain Name System (DNS) is a hierarchical distributed naming system for computers, services, or any resource connected to the Internet or a private network. It associates various information with domain names assigned to each of the participating entities. Most prominently, it translates easily memorized domain names to the numerical IP addresses needed for the purpose of locating computer services and devices worldwide. By providing a worldwide, distributed keyword-based redirection service, the Domain Name System is an essential component of the functionality of the Internet.

**DynDNS client** DynDNS service lets you access the router remotely using an easy to remember custom hostname. This client monitors the router's IP address and updates it whenever it changes.

## G

**GRE** Generic Routing Encapsulation (GRE) is a tunneling protocol that can encapsulate a wide variety of network layer protocols inside virtual point-to-point links over an Internet Protocol network. It is possible to create four different tunnels.

## H

**HTTP** The Hypertext Transfer Protocol (HTTP) is an application protocol for distributed, collaborative, hypermedia information systems. HTTP is the foundation of data communication for the World Wide Web.

Hypertext is structured text that uses logical links (hyperlinks) between nodes containing text. HTTP is the protocol to exchange or transfer hypertext.

**HTTPS** The Hypertext Transfer Protocol Secure (HTTPS) is a communications protocol for secure communication over a computer network, with especially wide deployment on the Internet. Technically, it is not a protocol in and of itself; rather, it is the result of simply layering the Hypertext Transfer Protocol (HTTP) on top of the SSL/TLS protocol, thus adding the security capabilities of SSL/TLS to standard HTTP communications.

## I

**IP address** An Internet Protocol address (IP address) is a numerical label assigned to each device (e.g., computer, printer) participating in a computer network that uses the Internet Protocol for communication. An IP address serves two principal functions: host or network interface identification and location addressing. Its role has been characterized as follows: *A name indicates what we seek. An*

*address indicates where it is. A route indicates how to get there*

The designers of the Internet Protocol defined an IP address as a 32-bit number and this system, known as Internet Protocol Version 4 (IPv4), is still in use today. However, due to the enormous growth of the Internet and the predicted depletion of available addresses, a new version of IP (IPv6), using 128 bits for the address, was developed in 1995.

**IP masquerade** Kind of NAT.

**IP masquerading** see NAT.

**IPsec** Internet Protocol Security (IPsec) is a protocol suite for securing Internet Protocol (IP) communications by authenticating and encrypting each IP packet of a communication session. The router allows user to select encapsulation mode (tunnel or transport), IKE mode (main or aggressive), IKE Algorithm, IKE Encryption, ESP Algorithm, ESP Encryption and much more. It is possible to create four different tunnels.

**IPv4** The Internet Protocol version 4 (IPv4) is the fourth version in the development of the Internet Protocol (IP) and the first version of the protocol to be widely deployed. It is one of the core protocols of standards-based internetworking methods of the Internet, and routes most traffic in the Internet. However, a successor protocol, IPv6, has been defined and is in various stages of production deployment. IPv4 is described in IETF publication RFC 791 (September 1981), replacing an earlier definition (RFC 760, January 1980).

**IPv6** The Internet Protocol version 6 (IPv6) is the latest revision of the Internet Protocol (IP), the communications protocol that provides an identification and location system for computers on networks and routes traffic across the Internet. IPv6 was developed by the Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF) to deal with the long-anticipated problem of IPv4 address exhaustion. IPv6 is intended to replace IPv4, which still carries the vast majority of Internet traffic as of 2013. As of late November 2012, IPv6 traffic share was reported to be approaching 1%. IPv6 addresses are represented as eight groups of four hexadecimal digits separated by colons (2001:0db8:85a3:0042:1000:8a2e:0370:7334), but methods of abbreviation of this full notation exist.

## L

**L2TP** Layer 2 Tunnelling Protocol (L2TP) is a tunnelling protocol used to support virtual private networks (VPNs) or as part of the delivery of services by ISPs. It does not provide any encryption or confidentiality by itself. Rather, it relies on an encryption protocol that it passes within the tunnel to provide privacy.

**LAN** A local area network (LAN) is a computer network that interconnects computers in a limited area such as a home, school, computer laboratory, or office building using network media. The defining characteristics of LANs, in contrast to wide area networks (WANs), include their usually higher data-transfer rates, smaller geographic area, and lack of a need for leased telecommunication lines.

## N

**NAT** In computer networking, Network Address Translation (NAT) is the process of modifying IP address information in IPv4 headers while in transit across a traffic routing device.

The simplest type of NAT provides a one-to-one translation of IP addresses. RFC 2663 refers to this type of NAT as basic NAT, which is often also called a one-to-one NAT. In this type of NAT only the IP addresses, IP header checksum and any higher level checksums that include the IP address are changed. The rest of the packet is left untouched (at least for basic TCP/UDP functionality; some higher level protocols may need further translation). Basic NATs can be used to interconnect two IP networks that have incompatible addressing.

**NAT-T** NAT traversal (NAT-T) is a computer networking methodology with the goal to establish and maintain Internet protocol connections across gateways that implement network address translation (NAT).

**NTP** Network Time Protocol (NTP) is a networking protocol for clock synchronization between computer systems over packet-switched, variable-latency data networks.

## O

**OpenVPN** OpenVPN implements virtual private network (VPN) techniques for creating secure point-to-point or site-to-site connections. It is possible to create four different tunnels.

## P

**PAT** Port and Address Translation (PAT) or Network Address Port Translation (NAPT) see NAT.

**Port** In computer networking, a Port is an application-specific or process-specific software construct serving as a communications endpoint in a computer's host operating system. A port is associated with an IP address of the host, as well as the type of protocol used for communication. The purpose of ports is to uniquely identify different applications or processes running on a single computer and thereby enable them to share a single physical connection to a packet-switched network like the Internet.

**PPTP** The Point-to-Point Tunneling Protocol (PPTP) is a tunneling protocol that operates at the Data Link Layer (Layer 2) of the OSI Reference Model. PPTP is a proprietary technique that encapsulates Point-to-Point Protocol (PPP) frames in Internet Protocol (IP) packets using the Generic Routing Encapsulation (GRE) protocol. Packet filters provide access control, end-to-end and server-to-server.

## R

**RADIUS** Remote Authentication Dial-In User Service (RADIUS) is a networking protocol that provides centralized Authentication, Authorization, and Accounting (AAA or Triple A) management for users who connect and use a network service. Because of the broad support and the ubiquitous nature of the RADIUS protocol, it is often used by ISPs and enterprises to manage access to the Internet or internal networks, wireless networks, and integrated e-mail services.

**Root certificate** In cryptography and computer security, a root certificate is either an unsigned public key certificate or a self-signed certificate that identifies the Root Certificate Authority (CA). A root certificate is part of a public key infrastructure scheme. The most common commercial

variety is based on the ITU-T X.509 standard, which normally includes a digital signature from a certificate authority (CA).

Digital certificates are verified using a chain of trust. The trust anchor for the digital certificate is the Root Certificate Authority (CA). See X.509.

**Router** A router is a device that forwards data packets between computer networks, creating an overlay internetwork. A router is connected to two or more data lines from different networks. When a data packet comes in one of the lines, the router reads the address information in the packet to determine its ultimate destination. Then, using information in its routing table or routing policy, it directs the packet to the next network on its journey. Routers perform the *traffic directing* functions on the Internet. A data packet is typically forwarded from one router to another through the networks that constitute the internetwork until it reaches its destination node.

## S

**SFTP** Secure File Transfer Protocol (SFTP) is a secure version of File Transfer Protocol (FTP), which facilitates data access and data transfer over a Secure Shell (SSH) data stream. It is part of the SSH Protocol. This term is also known as SSH File Transfer Protocol.

**SMTP** The SMTP (Simple Mail Transfer Protocol) is a standard e-mail protocol on the Internet and part of the TCP/IP protocol suite, as defined by IETF RFC 2821. SMTP defines the message format and the message transfer agent (MTA), which stores and forwards the mail. SMTP by default uses TCP port 25. The protocol for mail submission is the same, but uses port 587. SMTP connections secured by SSL, known as SMTPS, default to port 465.

**SMTPS** SMTPS (Simple Mail Transfer Protocol Secure) refers to a method for securing SMTP with transport layer security. For more information about SMTP, see description of the SMTP.

**SNMP** The Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) is an *Internet-standard protocol for managing devices on IP networks*. Devices that typically support SNMP include routers, switches, servers, workstations, printers, modem racks, and more. It is used mostly

in network management systems to monitor network-attached devices for conditions that warrant administrative attention. SNMP is a component of the Internet Protocol Suite as defined by the Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF). It consists of a set of standards for network management, including an application layer protocol, a database schema, and a set of data objects.

**SSH** Secure Shell (SSH), sometimes known as Secure Socket Shell, is a UNIX-based command interface and protocol for securely getting access to a remote computer. It is widely used by network administrators to control Web and other kinds of servers remotely. SSH is actually a suite of three utilities – `slogin`, `ssh`, and `scp` – that are secure versions of the earlier UNIX utilities, `rlogin`, `rsh`, and `rcp`. SSH commands are encrypted and secure in several ways. Both ends of the client/server connection are authenticated using a digital certificate, and passwords are protected by being encrypted.

## T

**TCP** The Transmission Control Protocol (TCP) is one of the core protocols of the Internet protocol suite (IP), and is so common that the entire suite is often called TCP/IP. TCP provides reliable, ordered, error-checked delivery of a stream of octets between programs running on computers connected to a local area network, intranet or the public Internet. It resides at the transport layer.

Web browsers use TCP when they connect to servers on the World Wide Web, and it is used to deliver email and transfer files from one location to another.

## U

**UDP** The User Datagram Protocol (UDP) is one of the core members of the Internet protocol suite (the set of network protocols used for the Internet). With UDP, computer applications can send messages, in this case referred to as datagrams, to other hosts on an Internet Protocol (IP) network without prior communications

to set up special transmission channels or data paths. The protocol was designed by David P. Reed in 1980 and formally defined in RFC 768.

**URL** A uniform resource locator, abbreviated URL, also known as web address, is a specific character string that constitutes a reference to a resource. In most web browsers, the URL of a web page is displayed on top inside an address bar. An example of a typical URL would be <http://www.example.com/index.html>, which indicates a protocol (`http`), a hostname (`www.example.com`), and a file name (`index.html`). A URL is technically a type of uniform resource identifier (URI), but in many technical documents and verbal discussions, URL is often used as a synonym for URI, and this is not considered a problem.

## V

**VPN** A virtual private network (VPN) extends a private network across a public network, such as the Internet. It enables a computer to send and receive data across shared or public networks as if it were directly connected to the private network, while benefiting from the functionality, security and management policies of the private network. This is done by establishing a virtual point-to-point connection through the use of dedicated connections, encryption, or a combination of the two.

A VPN connection across the Internet is similar to a wide area network (WAN) link between the sites. From a user perspective, the extended network resources are accessed in the same way as resources available from the private network.

**VPN server** see VPN.

**VPN tunnel** see VPN.

**VRRP** VRRP protocol (Virtual Router Redundancy Protocol) allows you to transfer packet routing from the main router to a backup router in case the main router fails. (This can be used to provide a wireless cellular backup to a primary wired router in critical applications).

## W

**WAN** A wide area network (WAN) is a network that covers a broad area (i.e., any telecommuni-

cations network that links across metropolitan, regional, or national boundaries) using private or public network transports. Business and government entities utilize WANs to relay data among employees, clients, buyers, and suppliers from various geographical locations. In essence, this mode of telecommunication allows a business to effectively carry out its daily function regardless of location. The Internet can be considered a WAN as well, and is used by businesses, governments, organizations, and individuals for almost any purpose imaginable.

**WebAccess/DMP** WebAccess/DMP is an advanced Enterprise-Grade platform solution for provisioning, monitoring, managing and configuring Advantech's routers and IoT gateways. It provides a zero-touch enablement platform for each remote device.

**WebAccess/VPN** WebAccess/VPN is an advanced VPN management solution for safe interconnection of Advantech routers and LAN networks in public Internet. Connection among devices and networks can be regional or global and can combine different technology platforms and various wireless, LTE, fixed and satellite connectivities.

## X

**X.509** In cryptography, X.509 is an ITU-T standard for a public key infrastructure (PKI) and Privilege Management Infrastructure (PMI). X.509 specifies, amongst other things, standard formats for public key certificates, certificate revocation lists, attribute certificates, and a certification path validation algorithm.

## Appendix C: Index

### A

|                            |     |
|----------------------------|-----|
| Access Point               |     |
| Configuration .....        | 52  |
| Information .....          | 13  |
| Accessing the router ..... | 2   |
| Add User .....             | 148 |
| APN .....                  | 42  |
| AT commands .....          | 127 |
| Authentication .....       | 111 |

### B

|                            |     |
|----------------------------|-----|
| Backup Configuration ..... | 161 |
| Backup Routes .....        | 62  |
| Bridge .....               | 27  |

### C

|                             |     |
|-----------------------------|-----|
| Change Profile .....        | 157 |
| Clock synchronization ..... | 118 |
| Configuration update .....  | 141 |
| Control SMS messages .....  | 125 |

### D

|                                           |                 |
|-------------------------------------------|-----------------|
| Data limit .....                          | 45              |
| Default Gateway .....                     | 26, 59          |
| Default IP address .....                  | 2               |
| Default password .....                    | 3               |
| Default SIM card .....                    | 46              |
| Default username .....                    | 3               |
| DHCP .....                                | 20, 26, 59, 176 |
| DHCPv6 .....                              | 28              |
| Dynamic .....                             | 28              |
| Static .....                              | 28              |
| DHCPv6 .....                              | 20, 26, 59      |
| DNS .....                                 | 176             |
| DNS server .....                          | 26, 43, 59      |
| DNS64 .....                               | 17              |
| Domain Name System .....                  | see DNS         |
| DoS attacks .....                         | 75              |
| Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol ..... | see DHCP        |
| DynDNS .....                              | 23, 115         |
| DynDNSv6 .....                            | 23, 115         |

### E

|                |     |
|----------------|-----|
| Expansion Port |     |
| RS232 .....    | 136 |
| RS485 .....    | 136 |

### F

|                                                   |          |
|---------------------------------------------------|----------|
| Firewall .....                                    | 73       |
| Filtering of Forwarded Packets .....              | 74       |
| Filtering of Incoming Packets .....               | 74       |
| Protection against DoS attacks .....              | 75       |
| Firmware update .....                             | 141, 163 |
| Firmware version .....                            | 9        |
| First-Time Login to the Admin Web Interface ..... | 3        |
| FTP .....                                         | 116      |

### G

|           |          |
|-----------|----------|
| GRE ..... | 102, 176 |
|-----------|----------|

### H

|            |     |
|------------|-----|
| HTTP ..... | 117 |
|------------|-----|

### I

|                          |                                                 |
|--------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| ICMPv6 .....             | 43                                              |
| IPsec .....              | 89, 177                                         |
| Authenticate Mode .....  | 94                                              |
| Encapsulation Mode ..... | 93                                              |
| IKE Mode .....           | 93                                              |
| IPv4 .....               | 177                                             |
| IPv6 ...                 | 8, 17, 25, 29, 42, 43, 73, 77, 84, 89, 115, 140 |

### L

|                          |          |
|--------------------------|----------|
| L2TP .....               | 105, 177 |
| LAN                      |          |
| ETH0 .....               | 25       |
| ETH1 .....               | 25       |
| IPv6 .....               | 25       |
| Location Area Code ..... | 10       |
| Logout .....             | 164      |

## M

|                      |            |
|----------------------|------------|
| Mobile network ..... | 42         |
| Modify User .....    | 150        |
| Multiple WANs .....  | 62, 64, 72 |

## N

|                                   |          |
|-----------------------------------|----------|
| NAT .....                         | 77, 177  |
| NAT64 .....                       | 17       |
| Neighbouring WiFi Networks .....  | 14       |
| Network Address Translation ..... | see NAT  |
| NTP .....                         | 118, 177 |
| NTP server .....                  | 158      |

## O

|                         |         |
|-------------------------|---------|
| Object Identifier ..... | 120     |
| OpenVPN .....           | 84, 178 |
| Authenticate Mode ..... | 85      |

## P

|                         |          |
|-------------------------|----------|
| PAT .....               | 77       |
| PIN number .....        | 159      |
| PLMN .....              | 10       |
| Port .....              | 178      |
| PPPoE .....             | 50       |
| PPTP .....              | 108, 178 |
| Prefix delegation ..... | 29       |
| PUK number .....        | 160      |

## R

|                             |            |
|-----------------------------|------------|
| RADIUS .....                | 31, 52, 55 |
| Reboot .....                | 164        |
| Remote access .....         | 79         |
| Restore Configuration ..... | 162        |
| Router .....                | 1          |
| Accessing .....             | 2          |
| Router Apps .....           | 145        |

## S

|                   |     |
|-------------------|-----|
| Save Log .....    | 24  |
| Save Report ..... | 24  |
| Send SMS .....    | 160 |
| Serial line ..... |     |
| RS232 .....       | 136 |
| RS485 .....       | 136 |

|                                          |          |
|------------------------------------------|----------|
| Serial number .....                      | 9        |
| Set internal clock .....                 | 158      |
| Signal Quality .....                     | 10       |
| Simple Network Management Protocol ..... | see SNMP |
| SMS .....                                | 124      |
| SMS Service Center .....                 | 159      |
| SMTP .....                               | 123, 178 |
| SNMP .....                               | 119, 178 |
| SSH .....                                | 133      |
| Startup Script .....                     | 139      |
| Static Routes .....                      | 72       |
| Switch between SIM Cards .....           | 45       |
| Syslog .....                             | 134      |
| System Log .....                         | 24       |

## T

|                                     |         |
|-------------------------------------|---------|
| TCP .....                           | 179     |
| Telnet .....                        | 135     |
| Transmission Control Protocol ..... | see TCP |
| Two-Factor Authentication .....     | 151     |

## U

|                                |         |
|--------------------------------|---------|
| UDP .....                      | 179     |
| Unblock SIM card .....         | 160     |
| Uniform resource locator ..... | see URL |
| Unlock SIM card .....          | 159     |
| Up/Down script .....           | 140     |
| URL .....                      | 179     |
| Usage Profiles .....           | 157     |
| User Datagram Protocol .....   | see UDP |
| Users .....                    | 148     |

## V

|                               |         |
|-------------------------------|---------|
| Virtual private network ..... | see VPN |
| VPN .....                     | 179     |
| VRRP .....                    | 38, 179 |

## W

|                      |        |
|----------------------|--------|
| WiFi .....           |        |
| Authentication ..... | 54, 60 |
| HW Mode .....        | 54     |
| WiFi AP .....        | 52     |
| WiFi STA .....       | 58     |
| WiFi Station .....   |        |
| Configuration .....  | 58     |
| WireGuard .....      | 97     |

# Appendix D: Related Documents

- [1] [Commands and Scripts](#)
- [2] [Remote Monitoring](#)
- [3] [WebAccess/DMP](#)
- [4] [R-SeeNet](#)
- [5] [OpenVPN Tunnel](#)
- [6] [IPsec Tunnel](#)
- [7] [GRE Tunnel](#)
- [8] [WireGuard Tunnel](#)
- [9] [FlexVPN](#)
- [10] [VLAN](#)
- [11] [SNMP Object Identifiers](#)
- [12] [AT Commands \(AT-SMS\)](#)
- [13] [Quality of Service \(QoS\)](#)
- [14] [Programming of Router Apps](#)
- [15] [Security Guidelines](#)



**[EP]** Product-related documents and applications can be obtained on **Engineering Portal** at <https://icr.advantech.com/download> address.



**[RA] Router Apps** (formerly *User modules*) and related documents can be obtained on *Engineering Portal* at <https://icr.advantech.com/products/router-apps> address.